

 **EL-MOASSER**

GUIDE



New

Hello!

& Treasure Island

By A Group Of Supervisors

الفصل الدراسي الثاني

للسف الأول الثانوى



تطبيق
التعلم التفاعلى

طبعة
جديدة

طبقاً للأحدث مواصفات
الورقة الامتحانية ٢٠٢٣-٢٠٢٤

1st
Sec.
2024

SECOND TERM
عام - أزهر

CONTENTS



قاموس المعاصر
الناطق

Module 3

Education

UNIT 7

Health and safety page 9

UNIT 8

Robots page 50

UNIT 9

A good education page 96

Revision 3

..... page 140

Module 4

The world of work

UNIT 10

What's your job ? page 146

UNIT 11

Amazing people page 194

UNIT 12

Hard work page 234

Revision 4

..... page 270

Monthly assessments page 274

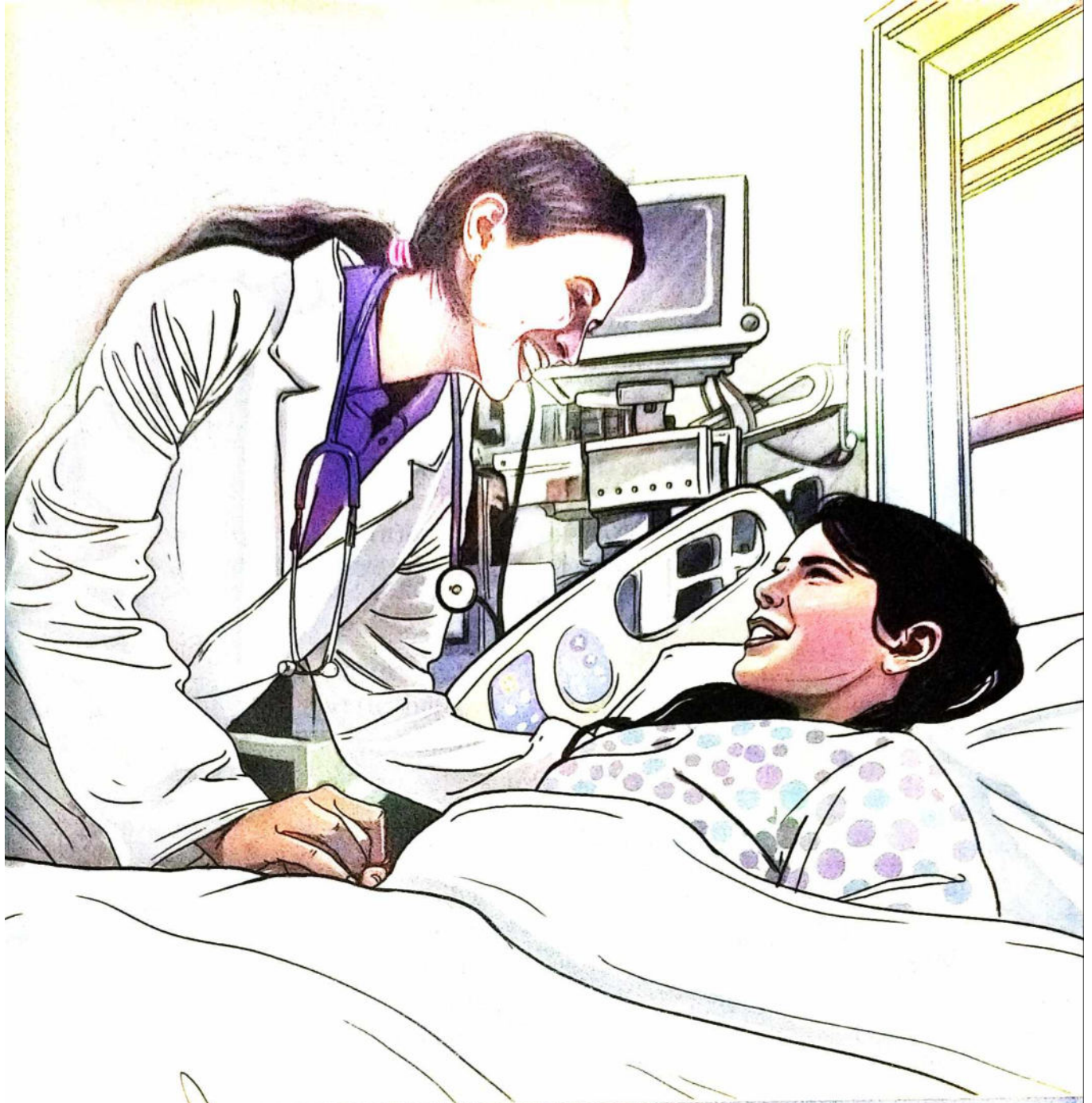
STORY

Treasure Island

page 280

توزيع منهج اللغة الإنجليزية للصف الأول الثانوي للعام الدراسي ٢٠٢٤/٢٠٢٣ Second Term

Months	New Hello! English for Secondary Schools Year One (SB+WB)
February	Units 7 + 8
March	Unit 8 cont. + Unit 9 + Revision 3 + Unit 10
April	Unit 10 cont. + Unit 11 + Unit 12
May	General Revision + Final Tests



UNIT

7

Health and safety

Objectives

- Understand the importance of health and safety in the workplace
- Identify the main areas of health and safety risk
- Understand the role of the Health and Safety Commission

Objectives

- Understand the importance of health and safety in the workplace
- Identify the main areas of health and safety risk
- Understand the role of the Health and Safety Commission



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

allergy(n)	حساسية	dust(ed) (n - v)	غبار - ينفذ الغبار
at least	على الأقل	emergency	خَدَقَاتُ الطَّوَارِئِ
bacteria(n)	بكتريا	services(n)	
bedding(n)	اغطية الفراش	first aid(n)	إسعافات أولية
bin(n)	سلة مهملات	grow - grew -	ينمو - يزداد - يزرع
breath(n)	النفس	grown (v)	
breathe(v)	يتنفس	hygiene(n)	النظافة (الشخصية)
CPR =	إنعاش قلبي رئوي	research(ed) (n - v)	بَحْث - يجري بَحْث
cardiopulmonary		respond(ed) (v)	يستجيب - يجب
resuscitation		soil(n)	تربة (زراعية)
danger(n)	خطر		

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

available(adj)	متوافر - متوافر	medical(adj)	طبي
avoid(ed) (v)	يتجنب - يتحاشى	messy(adj)	فوضوي / غير مرتب
basic (adj)	أساسي / رئيسي	nearby(adj)	قريب / مجاور
blog(n)	مدونة على الإنترنت	pet(n)	حيوان أليف
board(n)	لوح - لوحة - سطح	pollution(n)	التلوث
bottom(n)	أسفل - قاع - نعل	possibility(n)	إمكانية
cable(n)	كابل (سلك توصيل)	properly(adv)	جيداً - بشكل مناسب
cause(d) (v - n)	يسبب - سبب	question(ed) (v)	يتحقق من صحة - يناقش
check(ed) (v)	يفحص - يتحقق من	regularly(adv)	بانتظام
chop(ped) (v)	يقطع	remove(d) (v)	يزيل
cleaner (n)	مادة منظفة - عامل نظافة	replace(d) (v)	يستبدل - يحل محل
contact(ed) (n - v)	ملامسة / مخالطة - تواصل - يتواصل	rule(n)	قاعدة
contain(ed) (v)	يحتوي علي	safety(n)	الآمان
cough(ed) (v)	يسعل - يكح	scientific(adj)	علمي
dirt(n)	قذارة / اتساخ	separate (d) (adj - v)	منفصل - يفصل
disease(n)	مرض	sneeze(d) (v)	يعطس
DOs and DON'Ts	الأوامر والمحظورات	soapy(adj)	به صابون - صابوني

electrical(adj)	كهربائي	special(adj)	خاص
equipment(n)	مُعدّات / أجهزة	sponge(n)	إسفنجية
extra(adj)	إضافي	spreading(n)	التشّار
follow(ed) (v)	يتبع - يلي - يلتزم بـ	suggestion(n)	اقتراح
gardening(n)	العمل في البستان	tissue(n)	منديل ورقي
gloves(n)	قُفّاز (جوانتي)	topic(n)	موضوع - فكرة
ingredients(n)	مكونات - عناصر	trust(ed) (v - n)	يثق بـ - الثقة
interpret(ed) (v)	يُفسّر - يترجم	warm(ed)(adj - v)	دافئ - يُدفئ
law(n)	قانون	waste(d) (n - v)	فضلات - يهدر / يبدد
leaflet(n)	كُتَيْب - نشرة		

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
allergy(n) الحساسية	a medical condition in which you become ill or in which your skin becomes red and painful because you have eaten or touched a particular substance حالة طبية مؤلمة مادة معينة
bacteria(n) البكتريا	very small living things that cause diseases امراض
bedding(n) اغطية الفراش	sheets, covers etc. that you put on a bed أغطية
breathe(v) يتنفس	to take air in and out of your body
CPR الإنعاش القلبي الرئوي	= Cardiopulmonary resuscitation: something you do to help someone take air in and out of their body
danger(n) الخطر	the possibility of being hurt or killed إمكانية
DOs and DON'Ts الأوامر والمحظورات	things that you should and should not do in a particular situation محدد
dust(n) الغبار	dry powder consisting of extremely small bits of dirt that is in buildings on furniture, floors etc. if they are not kept clean مسحوق
emergency services(n) خدّات الطوارئ	basic medical help given quickly
first aid(n) إسعاف أولية	simple medical treatment that is given as soon as possible to someone who is injured or who suddenly becomes ill علاج مُصاب
hygiene(n) النظافة (الشخصية)	keeping yourself and the things around you clean
research(n) بحث / أبحاث	studying something to find new facts about it

respond(v) يستجيب to do something when someone talks to you
soil(n) التربة the top layer of the earth in which plants grow

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. I have a/an to certain foods, so I can't eat any of them.
 a. emergency b. fluency c. allergy d. experience
 (منطقة أسبوط الزهرية - أدبي ٢٠٢٣)
2. To stay healthy, always remember to change your bedding twice a week.
 a. at last b. lastly c. at least d. at most
 (غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)
3. My father felt pain in his stomach because of a harmful type of
 a. dusty b. wrapper c. bacteria d. bacterial
 (جرجا ٢٠٢٣)
4. The on the book shows that it hasn't been opened for a long time.
 a. dust b. bacteria c. hygiene d. aid
 (زفتي ٢٠٢٣)
5. Warm, wet places like a kitchen sponge are the places where bacteria like to in.
 a. know b. grow c. blow d. invest
 (اطسا ٢٠٢٣)
6. We should change the regularly to avoid infection.
 a. service b. leaflet c. blog d. bedding
 (مغاغة ٢٠٢٣)
7. Open the window, please! The children are unable to because of the smoke.
 a. sneeze b. skin c. blanket d. breathe
 (أوسيم ٢٠٢٣)
8. When my father's breathing stopped, I did him to make him breathe again.
 a. CRC b. CBC c. CPR d. MBC
 (الرحمانية ٢٠٢٣)
9. The boys could help the injured man because they had learnt about
 a. danger b. first aid c. hygiene d. first ad
 (شرق المنصورة ٢٠٢٣)
10. A healthy lifestyle includes having a nutritious diet and good personal
 a. statement b. emergency c. fantasy d. hygiene
 (القاهرة الجديدة ٢٠٢٣)
11. All the doctors are hopeful that the patient will to the new treatment.
 a. respond b. ruin c. reply d. answer
 (النوبارية ٢٠٢٣)
12. The in our field is very fertile. It is suitable for growing vegetables.
 a. seal b. sail c. soil d. sale
 (ادكو ٢٠٢٣)

13. Doctors ask patients to take a deep while being examined. (ارشيد ٢٠٢٣)
a. breeze b. breathless c. breathe d. breath

2 Important Vocabulary

14. We can't make a cake without sugar. It is an important (التركيبة ٢٠٢٣)
a. tool b. compound c. ingredient d. factor
15. The government is trying to improve measures on all railways.
a. safety b. risk c. danger d. threat
(ادكو ٢٠٢٣)
16. Air has reached dangerous levels in some cities. (التبين ٢٠٢٣)
a. pollution b. population c. expression d. evacuation
17. We must book in advance. There is only a limited number of tickets (المرج ٢٠٢٣)
a. possible b. avoidable c. unavailable d. available
18. I think it's a of money to buy this expensive car. (الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢٣)
a. waist b. benefit c. waste d. challenge
19. Try to contact with people who have infectious diseases. (امراض معدية)
a. avoid b. contain c. interpret d. separate
20. He used a sharp knife to the meat.
a. chop b. warn c. explain d. offer
21. Hygiene reduces the of being ill.
a. help b. link c. possibility d. suggestion
22. My bag everything needed for the trip.
a. avoids b. contains c. interprets d. separates
23. We do not advice from people we love and respect.
a. question b. sneeze c. cause d. remove
24. I believe what you say because I you.
a. hate b. doubt c. distrust d. trust
25. My sister wears when she does the washing up to protect her hands.
a. socks b. gloves c. slippers d. bottoms
26. Smoking much harm to your health.
a. questions b. sneezes c. causes d. removes
27. No one is allowed to shout at others in our house. It is an important family
a. rule b. ruler c. role d. member
28. A patient needs help.
a. surprising b. strange c. separate d. medical
29. When my children play in their room, it becomes
a. proper b. messy c. regular d. soapy
30. I her silence صمت as anger.
a. avoided b. contained c. interpreted d. separated

3 Definitions

31. The word means the possibility of being killed or hurt.
a. hunger b. danger c. anger d. vinegar
(Tablet Exam 2022)
32. Which of the following means "the things that you should and should not do in a particular situation"?
a. DOs and DON'Ts b. Do and does
c. Pros and cons d. Ups and downs
33. is the top layer of the earth in which plants grow.
a. The earth b. Soil c. Rock d. Stone
34. are very small living things that cause diseases.
a. Bacterium b. Bacteria c. Cells d. Tissues
35. To is to take air in and out of your body.
a. evacuate b. take c. breath d. breathe
36. A is something you do to help someone take air in and out of their body.
a. UK b. CPR c. USA d. UN
37. means studying something to find new facts about it.
a. A research b. Research c. Report d. Helmet
38. To is to do something when someone talks to you.
a. offer b. chop c. contain d. respond
39. is a medical condition in which you become ill or in which your skin becomes red and painful because you have eaten or touched a particular substance.
a. Aid b. Allergy c. Asleep d. Damage
40. The word means sheets, covers etc. that you put on a bed.
a. bedding b. response c. danger d. argument

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations المتلازمات اللفظية

carry	bacteria	تنقل العدوي البكتيرية		a shower	يستحم
contain	bacteria	تحتوي على بكتيريا	have	bacteria	تحتوي على بكتيريا
do	CPR	يقوم بعمل الإنعاش القلبي الرئوي		an allergy to	لديه حساسية من
feel	clean	يبدو نظيفاً	keep	... clean	يحافظ علي ... نظيفاً
follow	the rules	يتبع القواعد	make	... harder	يجعل ... أكثر صعوبة
get	dirty	يتسخ	post	... online	ينشر ... على الإنترنت

give	advice	يلصح	spend	time with	يقضي وقتاً مع
	an extra clean	يقوم بعملية نظافة إضافية	stay	clean	يحافظ علي نظافته
	first aid	يقوم بعمل الإسعافات الأولية	take	air in and out	يتنفس

2 Synonyms المترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
available	مُتاح - متوافر
danger	الخطر
dirty	متسخ
follow	يتبع/ يلتزم بـ
interpret	يُفسّر/ يوضح
messy	فوضوي / غير مُرتّب
respond	يستجيب - يتجاوب مع
respond	يجيب - يرد علي
safe	آمن
safety	الأمان

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
available	غير متاح - مشغول
bottom	قاع
danger	الخطر
follow	يتبع/ يلتزم بـ
interpret	يُفسّر/ يوضح
messy	فوضوي / غير مُرتّب
respond	يستجيب - يتجاوب مع

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

allergy	
allergy(n)	حساسية
allergen(n)	مادة مُسببة للحساسية
allergic(adj)	لديه حساسية
bacteria	
bacteria(n)	بكتيريا
bacteriology(n)	علم البكتيريا
bacterial(adj)	بكتيري

breathe		
breathe(v)	يتنفس	- Healthy people breathe normally.
breath(n)	النفس	- Healthy people have normal breath.
breathing(n)	التنفس	- Breathing provides the body with oxygen.
dust		
dust(v)	ينفض التراب	- I dust the windows regularly.
dust(n)	الغبار / التراب	- I remove dust from the windows regularly.
dusty(adj)	مُغْبَر / مُتْرَب	- The windows are dusty. I need to clean them.
danger		
endanger(v)	يُعرّض للخطر	- Never endanger your life.
danger(n)	الخطر	- Never put yourself in danger.
dangerous(adj)	خطير	- Never put yourself in dangerous situations.
grow		
grow(v)	يزرع	- We grow potatoes in this field.
grow(v)	ينمو/ يترعرع	- Potatoes grow well in this field.
growth(n)	النمو/ الزيادة	- The growth of potatoes in this field is good.
growing(adj)	متزايد/ نام	- There's a growing interest in using technology for education.
respond		
respond(v)	يستجيب	- She responded to my email.
response(n)	استجابة	- I received her response to my letter.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a home for / to	موطن لـ	No more dust!	لا مزيد من الغبار
as often as you can	كثيراً قدر المُستطاع	once a week	مرة في الأسبوع
breathe a word	يفشي سر	research into hygiene	بحث عن النظافة الشخصية
contact with pets	مخالطة الحيوانات الأليفة	do research on the same topic	يقوم بأبحاث على نفس الموضوع
full of	مملوء بـ	scientific research	البحث العلمي
in an emergency	في حالة الطوارئ		
it's most important	من المهم جداً		
stop the bacteria spreading	يمنع انتشار البكتريا		

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

belong to	يلتمي إلي / ل - يخص	protect ... against / from	يحمي ... من
come back	يعود / يرجع	respond to	يستجيب ل / يتجاوب مع
drink from	يشرب من	return from	يعود من
find about	يعرف عن	shout at	يصيح في (يرعق ل)
go into	يدخل	take ... off	يخلع / ينزع (ملابس / ريش / شعر)
lie on	يستلقي علي	take off	تُقلع الطائرة
live on	يعيش على - يتغذى علي	talk to	يتحدث إلي / مع
move ... away from	ينقل ... بعيداً عن	move around	يتجول في أرجاء

7 لاحظ الفرق Clear the confusion

allergy / sensitivity

- **allergy (n)** حساسية
 - I have an allergy to wool. الصوف
- **sensitivity (n)** الحساسية (تخص أي عضو بالجسم / المشاعر)
 - Sama has sensitivity to milk.
- **sensitive (adj)** شخص حساس
 - A sensitive child would cry if you shout at them.

bacteria / virus

- **bacteria (n)** بكتيريا (كائنات حية دقيقة منها الضار ومنها النافع)
 - This disease is caused by a type of bacteria.
- **viruses (n)** فيروسات (كائنات دقيقة تسبب أمراض خطيرة)
 - This disease is caused by the AIDS virus.

miss / Miss / mess / messy

- **miss (v)** يفتقد - يفقد / يفوته
 - I miss my grandmother very much. أفتقد
 - Ali missed the school bus. فاتته
- **Miss (n)** آنسة (لقب ل (غير) المتزوجة يوضع قبل اسم العائلة)
 - Sama received a call from Miss Zaki.
- **mess (n)** فوضوي - لخبطة
 - Everything is on the floor. What a mess!
- **messy (adj)** فوضوي - ملخبط
 - Why don't you tidy your messy room?

properly / property

- **properly (adv)** بشكل صحيح - بطريقة ملائمة
 - You must do your jobs properly.
- **property (n)** ممتلكات - أملاك
 - The thief stole some property.

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

★ MRQ : Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. "Parents give their children security and love." The synonyms of "security" are (دسوق ٢٠٢٣)

a. protection	b. danger	c. sorrow
d. safety	e. honesty	
2. Don't a word of that to anyone. It is a top-secret conversation between us. (منوف ٢٠٢٣)

a. breathe	b. wrap	c. hear
d. listen	e. say	
3. Wearing a helmet reduces the of head injuries. (دسوق ٢٠٢٣)

a. risk	b. safety	c. danger
d. security	e. health	
4. Check all your electrical regularly to avoid electric accidents. (الخصوص ٢٠٢٣)

a. equipment	b. settlements	c. requirements
d. experiments	e. cables	
5. Don't worry! These toys are; they aren't dangerous. (منيا القمح ٢٠٢٣)

a. difficult	b. secure	c. serious
d. safe	e. heavy	
6. Your room is messy. It is not (كفر شكر ٢٠٢٣)

a. untidy	b. needy	c. clean
d. former	e. tidy	
7. "She found the keys at the bottom of her handbag." The antonyms of the word "bottom" are (المنزه اول ٢٠٢٣)

a. back	b. base	c. top
d. rule	e. peak	
8. "You have to follow your goal." The synonyms of "follow" are (ميت غمر ٢٠٢٣)

a. chase	b. leave	c. pursue
d. miss	e. lose	
9. A pile of plates was left in the kitchen sink. (انج حمادي ٢٠٢٣)

a. filthy	b. clean	c. clear
d. dirty	e. care	
10. "The main reason for living here is the good weather." The synonyms of the word "main" are (النزهة ٢٠٢٣)

a. major	b. secondary	c. minor
d. basic	e. dependable	

11. Dirty places bacteria.
 a. have b. spend c. contain
 d. stay e. make
12. When you breathe, you take air and
 a. up b. down c. off
 d. in e. out

★ MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. On returning from our long holiday, the house didn't feel clean since everything was
 (بطسا ٢٠٢٣)
 a. dust b. dusty c. rust d. sparkling
2. People who have an allergy always if they smell smoke. (الرحمانية ٢٠٢٣)
 a. sneeze b. freeze c. breeze d. tweeze
3. My daughter is to wool. (بولاق ٢٠٢٣)
 a. allergic b. optimistic c. paramedic d. hygienic
4. Make sure that the place does not dirty.
 a. put b. get c. have d. make
5. The first aid you have to the injured boy has saved his life.
 a. kept b. said c. given d. felt
6. This place clean.
 a. keeps b. says c. gives d. feels
7. "....." is to ignore as argument is to agreement.
 a. Respond b. Package c. Tidy d. Orderly
8. Smoking is for your health.
 a. endangers b. danger c. dangerous d. dangerously
9. Keeping clean stops the bacteria
 a. to spread b. to spreading c. spreading d. spread
10. Factories that cause pollution must be moved cities.
 a. away from b. away c. into d. in
11. They have done important research how to avoid catching coronavirus.
 a. for b. of c. to d. into
12. The engine of my car does not work
 a. proper b. properly c. property d. a & c
13. He has to milk products.
 a. allergy b. sensitivity c. a & b d. sensibility

PART IV LANGUAGE

should / shouldn't - must / mustn't

1 should / shouldn't + inf.

١ تُستخدم لتقديم النصيحة :

- ex. - You should work hard.
- You shouldn't get up late.

٢ تُستخدم في صيغة الاستفهام لطلب النصيحة :

- ex. - Should I take a rest after school ?
- What should I do to get high marks ?

٣ تُستخدم لعمل اقتراحات :

- ex. - You should travel by plane. It's much faster.

٤ تُستخدم لإبداء الرأي الشخصي :

- ex. - She should join a sports club. It will help her keep fit.

٥ لاحظ بناء الجملة في الصيغ المختلفة :

- ex. - Sama should be careful to pass the driving test. (إثبات)
- Sama shouldn't be careless to pass the driving test. (نفي)
- Should Sama be careful to pass the driving test ? (سؤال بـ هل)
- Why should Sama be careful ? (سؤال بـ أداة استفهام)

٦ لاحظ بناء الجملة في المبني للمجهول :

Obj. مفعول + should / shouldn't + be + p.p.

- ex. - You should revise your essay again. (معلوم)
- Your essay should be revised again. (مجهول)

2 must / mustn't + inf.

١ تعبر عن قاعدة عامة أو نص القانون :

- ex. - Drivers must follow traffic rules.
- You mustn't smoke in hospitals.

٢ تعبر عن ضرورة أو إلزام من داخل الشخص مع (I / We) :

- ex. - I must go and buy some bread before the bakery is closed.
- We mustn't go out without telling our parents.

٣ تستخدم في الدعوة القوية أو التحذير من شيء خطير (مع الأشخاص المقربين) :

- ex. - You must come and try mum's food. I'm sure you will like it. (دعوة)
- You mustn't make friends with this bad person. (تحذير)

٤ تستخدم في تقديم نصيحة قوية لشخص مقرب :

- ex. - You must stop smoking. It's destroying your health.
- You mustn't smoke. It's harmful for health.

١ لاحظ بناء الجملة في الصيغ المختلفة :

- ex. - You must stop using your mobile while driving. (إلزام)
 - You mustn't use your mobile while driving. (نهي)
 - Must we stop using our mobile while driving ? (سؤال بـ هل)
 - What must we stop doing while driving ? (سؤال بـ أداة استفهام)

٢ لاحظ صيغة المبني للمجهول :

Obj. مفعول + must / mustn't + be + p.p.

- ex. - Everyone must follow the traffic rules. (معلوم)
 - The traffic rules must be followed (by everyone). (مجهول)

ملاحظات إضافية Extra Notes

١ تستخدم (should have + p.p.) في لوم شخص على عدم فعل شيء كان ينبغي أن يفعله :

- I blame you for not cleaning your room.
 = You should have cleaned your room.

٢ تستخدم (shouldn't have + p.p.) في لوم شخص على فعل شيء كان ينبغي ألا يفعله :

- I don't think it was a good idea to get up so late.
 = You shouldn't have got up so late.

ملاحظات هامة Important Notes

١ طرق أخرى لإعطاء النصيحة :

Something to do

- You ought to + inf.
- It's better to + inf.
- It's desirable to + inf.
- It's advisable to + inf.
- I advise you to + inf.
- My advice to you is to + inf.
- You ('d) had better + inf.
- It will be a good idea to + inf.
- It would be sensible to + inf.
- The best thing to do is to + inf.
- If I were you, I'd + inf.
- It would be better if + ماضي بسيط

Something not to do

- You ought not to + inf.
- It's better not to + inf.
- It's undesirable to + inf.
- It's inadvisable to + inf.
- I advise you not to + inf.
- My advice to you is not to + inf.
- You had better not + inf.
- It will be a good idea not to + inf.
- It would be insensible to + inf.
- The best thing to do is not to + inf.
- If I were you, I wouldn't + inf.
- It wouldn't be better if + ماضي بسيط

- You should do your best to pass the exam.
- = It is advisable to do your best to pass the exam.
- You shouldn't eat too much food.
- = If I were you, I wouldn't eat too much food.

❖ لاحظ الطرق المختلفة للتعبير عن الضرورة :

1 have to / has to + inf. مصدر.....

- تعبير (have to) عن الزام خارجي مثل الالتزام بالقوانين أو القواعد في مواقف وحالات محددة (أي لا يوجد اختيار للفرد) :
- I have to arrive at work at 9 sharp. My boss is very strict صارم.
- He has to pass his exams or the university will not accept him.

- لاحظ أن نفي (have / has to) هو (don't / doesn't have to) :

- don't / doesn't + have to + inf. ليس ضرورياً أن / لست مضطراً لـ

- You don't have to get up early on holidays. (Not: You haven't to)
- He doesn't have to leave now. (Not: He hasn't to)
- لاحظ الفرق بين (don't / doesn't have to) و (mustn't) :
- You mustn't leave now. (غير مسموح لك أن تغادر الآن)
- You don't have to leave now. (لست مضطراً أن تغادر (لكن القرار لك))
- لاحظ أن صيغة الماضي لـ (must / has to / have to) هي :

- had to + inf. (كان من الضروري أن / كان لابد أن)

- I had to break the door because I had lost my keys.
- Rodayna didn't have to do the shopping. (Not: Rodayna hadn't to)

- لاحظ استخدام (need to / needs to) للتعبير عن الضرورة :

2 need to / needs to + inf. مصدر.....

- I need to go to bed earlier.
- He needs to do something about his old house.
- لاحظ أن نفي (need / needs to) هو :

- don't / doesn't need to + inf. ... ليس ضرورياً أن / لست مضطراً لـ = needn't + inf. ...

- You don't need to carry all these bags.
- You needn't carry all these bags. (Not: needn't to carry)
- لاحظ عدم استخدام (to) بعد (needn't) كما في المثال السابق.
- لاحظ الفرق بين (didn't have to) و (needn't have) :

- didn't have to + inf. ... لم يفعل الشيء لأن ذلك لم يكن ضرورياً

- needn't have + p.p. ... فعل الشيء ثم اتضح أن ذلك لم يكن ضرورياً

- I didn't have to buy cheese because we have much. (لم اشترى)
- I needn't have bought cheese. We have much. (اشتريت)

3 It is necessary for + ضمير مفعول / فاعل + to + inf. مصدر.....

- It is necessary for Amir to arrive early.
- It is necessary for us to follow the rules.

4 It is a necessity (a must) for + ضمير مفعول / فاعل + to + inf. مصدر.....

- It is a necessity for Amir to arrive early.
- It is a must for us to follow the rules.

❗ لاحظ الطرق المختلفة للتعبير عن المنع أو التحذير:

1 mustn't + inf. مصدر.....

- You mustn't park here.

2 (be) not allowed / It is against the law + to + inf. مصدر.....

- You aren't allowed to park here. = Parking here isn't allowed.
- = It's against the law to park here.

3 (be) not permitted to + inf. مصدر..... = It isn't permitted to + inf.

- You aren't permitted to park here. = Parking here isn't permitted.
- = It's not permitted to park here.

4 It is banned + to + inf. مصدر..... = (be) banned from + (inf. + ing) ...

- It is banned to park here. = You are banned from parking here.

5 It is prohibited + to + inf. مصدر.....

= (be) prohibited from + (inf. + ing)

- It is prohibited to park here. = You are prohibited from parking here.

6 It is forbidden / illegal + to + inf. مصدر.....

= (be) forbidden from + (inf. + ing)

- It is forbidden to park here. = You are forbidden from parking here.

General Exercise On Language

● Apply

● ⚡ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. You try this cake; it's delicious!

(ارشيد ٢٠٢٣)

a. mustn't b. must c. shouldn't d. necessary

2. I can give you a lift to the airport. You to take a taxi.

(المرج ٢٠٢٣)

a. needn't b. don't need c. must d. have

3. It's a/an to get a doctor at once.

(الزيتون ٢٠٢٣)

a. necessary b. must c. should d. advice

4. You turn this music down before your dad gets angry. (البطارية ٢٠٢٣)
 a. need b. ought c. had better d. must to
5. You allowed to drive at more than 110 kph on the motorway.
 a. aren't b. don't c. haven't d. hadn't
 (كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)
6. You pass our exams to get into university. (شبراخيت ٢٠٢٣)
 a. have to b. mustn't c. need d. must have
7. We still have time. We hurry. (سمند ٢٠٢٣)
 a. needn't b. don't have c. should d. have got to
8. You buy a pen. I'll lend you one. (الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢٣)
 a. have b. needn't c. don't have to d. b and c
9. Emad cut his leg and go to hospital for treatment. (غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)
 a. should b. needs to c. had to d. has to
10. Students follow the rules of the school. (بولاق ٢٠٢٣)
 a. can b. must c. may d. might
11. There is a "No Smoking" sign. We smoke here. (ادفو ٢٠٢٣)
 a. shouldn't b. should c. mustn't d. must
12. You come and try mum's food. I'm sure you will like it. (ادفو ٢٠٢٣)
 a. should b. must c. have to d. ought to

2 Special cases

13. Your essay has some mistakes. It again. (الدلتا ٢٠٢٣)
 a. should revise b. should have revised
 c. shouldn't be revised d. should be revised
14. The car You are starting to lose control. (كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)
 a. must be stopped b. should not stop
 c. must stop d. should have stopped

3 Check your understanding

15. Hany shouldn't have talked rudely to his teacher. This means Hany to his teacher. (الدلتا ٢٠٢٣)
 a. didn't talk rudely b. talked politely
 c. talked rudely d. doesn't talk rudely



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

blanket(n)	بطانية	evacuate(d) (v)	يُخَلِّي / يغادر (مكان)
burn - burned / burnt (v)	يحرق - يحترق	immediately(adv)	حالاً / على الفور
burn (n)	خزق	injured (adj)	مُصاب
calm(adj)	هادئ	wrap(ped) (v)	يُغَلِّف (يلف) - يَغطِّي
emergency (n)	حالة طوارئ		

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

apologise(d) (v)	يعتذر	hurt - hurt (v)	يؤذي - يؤلم
argument(n)	جدال - خلاف	living thing (n)	كائن حي
back(n)	الظهر	offer(ed) (n - v)	غرض - يعرض
borrow(ed) (v)	يستعير / يقترض	plaster(n)	شريط لاصق
complain(ed) (v)	يشكو	pressure(d) (n - v)	ضغط - يضغط
cut (n - v)	جرح - يجرع	realise(d) (v)	يُدرك
damage (n)	ضرر / تلف	serious(adj)	خطير - جاد
damage(d) (v)	يُضرر / يُتلف	smell - smelled/	بشم - يُصدر رائحة
explain(ed) (v)	يوضح - يشرح	smelt (v)	
fire (n)	حريق - لهب	smell (n)	رائحة
fire(d) (v)	يفصل من العمل	smoke(d) (n - v)	دخان - يُدخّن
helmet(n)	خوذة		

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
blanket(n) بطانية	a warm cover on a bed
burn(n) خزق	damage ضرر to the body caused by fire or heat
evacuate(v) يُخَلِّي / يغادر (مكان)	to leave a place because it is not safe
immediately(adv) حالاً / على الفور	very quickly, without waiting
wrap(v) يُغَلِّف (يلف) - يَغطِّي	to cover something with cloth or paper

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

★ Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Key vocabulary

1. If there is an accident and someone is injured, you should them in a blanket immediately to keep them warm. (الطسا ٢٠٢٣)
a. cover b. wrap c. hide d. sleeps
2. In Turkey, after the destructive earthquake, the government had to many people from their homes. (أسوان ٢٠٢٣)
a. evacuate b. travel c. leave d. develop
3. The man was taken to hospital in an ambulance.
a. injured b. calm c. serious d. warm
4. We need a doctor in the room.
a. back b. helmet c. blanket d. emergency
5. In summer, we do not need as it is not cold.
a. fans b. blankets c. clothes d. water
6. An ambulance took the injured man to the nearest hospital.
a. immediately b. sleepy c. messily d. dirtily
7. Staying in the hot sun for a long time our skin.
a. wraps b. complains c. evacuates d. burns
8. When your baby sister is asleep, keep
a. injured b. calm c. dangerous d. warm

2 Important Vocabulary

9. She often about not feeling appreciated at work. (البحيرة ٢٠٢٣)
a. suggests b. realizes c. complains d. concentrates
10. After the crash, there had been much caused to my car. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)
a. damages b. injury c. damage d. hurt
11. It was not fair to that hard-working secretary.
a. damage b. fire c. offer d. smoke
12. Pollution is a/an problem.
a. injured b. calm c. serious d. warm
13. He suffers from some pain in his
a. back b. helmet c. blanket d. emergency
14. The on my leg is very painful مؤلم.
a. cut b. toes c. foot d. fingers

15. These people need much help because the has destroyed their house completely.
a. report b. sponge c. tissue d. fire
16. Bacteria are things.
a. alive b. living c. asleep d. away
17. I need a medical to cover the cut.
a. damage b. fire c. plaster d. pressure
18. You must wear a/an when riding a motorbike.
a. back b. helmet c. blanket d. emergency
19. "Cutting down trees cause much damage to the environment."
The word 'damage' here is a/an
a. verb b. adverb c. noun d. pronoun
20. The you put on a child has bad effects on them.
a. damage b. fire c. plaster d. pressure

3 Definitions

21. To is to cover something with cloth or paper.
a. grow b. evacuate c. wrap d. respond
22. A is a warm cover on a bed.
a. blanket b. pillow c. sheet d. bedding
23. is damage to the body caused by fire or heat.
a. research b. breath c. fire d. burn
24. To is to leave a place because it is not safe.
a. grow b. evacuate c. wrap d. respond
25. means very quickly, without waiting.
a. At least b. Asleep c. Immediately d. Properly

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations المتلازمات اللفظية

get	angry	يغضب	a mistake	يخطئ
have	an argument with	يقع في خلاف مع	make	يتأكد
	problems	لديه مشاكل	sure	يتأكد
	an accident	يقع له حادث	put	يضغط على
	exams coming up	لديه امتحانات قريباً	receive	يتلقى النصيحة
take	action	يتصرف	say	يعتذر
			stay	يحتفظ بهدونه

2 Synonyms المترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
argument	جدال - خلاف
cut	جرح
evacuate	يُخلى (مكان)
immediately	حالاً/على الفور
remove	يزيل
serious	خطير
wrap	يُغلف (يلف) - يغطي
	disagreement, dispute
	injury, wound
	leave, remove, move out, clear, empty, take away
	instantly, at once
	clear, stop
	dangerous, hazardous
	cover, bundle up, package

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
argument	جدال - خلاف
evacuate	يُخلى (مكان)
immediately	حالاً/على الفور
serious	خطير
wrap	يُغلف / يغطي
worried	قلق
	agreement
	stay, remain
	later on
	secure, safe
	unwrap, uncover
	calm, relaxed
	إتفاق / توافق
	يبقى / يظل
	فيما بعد
	آمن
	يكشف / يزيل الغلاف
	هادئ

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

evacuate	
evacuate(v) يُجلى - يُفرَّغ	- We evacuated the burning house quickly.
evacuation(n) الإجلاء - التفريغ	- The evacuation of the burning house was necessary.
evacuee(n) لاجئ	- The evacuees from the burning house are all safe.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

at / on the beach	على الشاطئ	forget about it	ينسى الأمر
at the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	if possible	إذا كان ذلك ممكناً
be sorry for	يأسف علي	keep a person still	يبقى الشخص ساكناً
close to	قريب من	on fire	مُشتعل

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

ask for	يطلب	get to	يصل إلي
come up	يُخَدِّث	go out	يخرج
complain about	يشكو من	help with	يساعد في
cover ... with	يغطي ... بـ	offer to	يعرض أن

decide on
evacuate ... from
evacuate ... to
warn about / against

يختار / يحدد
يُجلى / يُبعد ... عن
يُنقل ... إلى
يحذر من

put ... on
think about/of
travel around

يضع ... علي - يرتدي
يفكر في
تنتشر في - يتجول في

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

- ☆ MRQ : Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. "Doctors are worried about the possible spread of the disease." The antonyms of the word "worried" are and (طلباً ٢٠٢٣)
a. anxious b. astonishing c. cautious
d. relaxed e. calm
2. The present was beautifully with gold paper. (فرب طنطا ٢٠٢٣)
a. remained b. evacuated c. wrapped
d. confused e. covered
3. "Helicopters were used to evacuate people from their homes." The synonyms of the word "evacuate" are (فرب المنصورة ٢٠٢٣)
a. empty b. take away c. fill
d. pack e. evaluate
4. "For our safety, we should cover our cuts not to be infected or polluted." The synonyms of the word "cuts" are (العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٣)
a. organs b. members c. wounds
d. remedies e. injuries
5. "Eiad should use soapy water to remove all the bacteria." "Remove" gives the meaning of (القوصية ٢٠٢٣)
a. carry b. clear c. contain
d. stop e. contact
6. You advice.
a. give b. make c. spend
d. stay e. receive
7. Please, don't get
a. better b. dirty c. clean
d. angry e. real
8. A place clean when you it clean.
a. feels - stay b. stays - feel c. feels - keep
d. stays - keep e. keeps - feel
9. My grandfather warned me bad company الضحبة.
a. against b. to c. from
d. with e. about

• **MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. My friend can't decide his goal!
a. in b. to c. on d. for (النوبارية ٢٠٢٣)
2. He feels awfully sorry for the mistake he has
a. put b. got c. had d. made
3. He is upset. Don't more pressure on him.
a. put b. get c. have d. make
4. He bowed his head and sorry.
a. kept b. said c. gave d. filled
5. The police found that the of people from the area near the burning factory necessary.
a. evacuate b. evacuation c. respond d. response
6. He is a loving father who is close his children.
a. of b. from c. with d. to
7. Stop complaining everything and solve your problems.
a. as b. about c. with d. onto
8. It is the right thing to an injured person still.
a. keep b. do c. give d. tell
9. I thanked her when she offered me.
a. helping b. to help c. for helping d. help
10. I'll call you if
a. is possible b. possible c. possibly d. b & c

PART III READING

Reading Texts

To : (name)

Lesson 3 SB page 10

Subject : Advice

Dear,

How are you? I'm well, but I'm writing to ask for some advice. Do you remember my **neighbour**⁽¹⁾, Mrs Zeinab? She had an **accident**⁽²⁾ last year and now she doesn't go out much. It isn't easy for her to clean. I went to her flat yesterday and the bins were **full**⁽³⁾. The floor and kitchen were **dirty**⁽⁴⁾, too. She **complained**⁽⁵⁾ about her **back**⁽⁶⁾ hurting and I think she needs help, but I have a lot of exams **coming up**⁽⁷⁾. What do you think I should do?

I hope you can help me.

Best wishes,

(1) جار / جارة

(2) حادث

(3) مملوء

(4) مُتسخ - غير نظيف

(5) يشكو

(6) الظهر

(7) تقترب

To : Amir
Subject : Help !

Hi Amir,

How are you? I hope you had a good weekend at the beach. Samy told me about the **argument**⁽¹⁾ you had with Hany. I think it would be a good idea to say that you are sorry for getting angry. Stay **calm**⁽²⁾ and **explain**⁽³⁾ that he should ask you before he borrows your things. I'm sure he will **realise**⁽⁴⁾ that he made a **mistake**⁽⁵⁾ and he will say sorry too. Why don't you talk to him tomorrow?

I suggest talking to him in the morning because he is usually busy on Sunday afternoons.

Now I hope you can help me with my problem. Do you remember that I was **planning**⁽⁶⁾ to clean my house at the weekend? Well, I was busy and I forgot about it! 😞 The problem is that my parents are coming home tomorrow and the house is really dirty. There's dust **everywhere**⁽⁷⁾ and there's a **strange**⁽⁸⁾ **smell**⁽⁹⁾ in the kitchen!

What should I do? Help!

Regards,
Maher

- (1) جدال - خلاف
(2) هادئ
(3) يوضح - يشرح
(4) يدرك
(5) خطأ
(6) يخطط
(7) في كل مكان
(8) غريب
(9) رائحة

PART IV LANGUAGE

راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثاني.

تنويه

General Exercise On Language

• Apply

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

- We learn computer skills at school because they are very useful.
a. mustn't b. should c. can't d. don't
(منطقة البحيرة الأزهرية - أدبي ٢٠٢٣)
- You use your phone while you're driving. It's dangerous.
a. must b. can c. mustn't d. should
(شرق المنصورة ٢٠٢٣)
- You do the shopping now. I'll do it later.
a. mustn't b. needn't c. must d. have to
(أوسيم ٢٠٢٣)
- You make noise in the library. It isn't allowed.
a. needn't b. mustn't c. had better d. ought to
(منوف ٢٠٢٣)

5. My friend has sent me an email this morning. I reply soon or he will start to worry. (شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)
- a. don't have to b. mustn't c. don't need to d. need to
6. Passengers cross the crossroads in their cars when the traffic light is red.
- a. ought to b. mustn't c. must d. should
7. You should vegetables before you cook them.
- a. wash b. be washed c. to wash d. washing
8. Vegetables should before you cook them.
- a. wash b. be washed c. to wash d. washing
9. You must your mother with the housework. She looks tired.
- a. help b. be helped c. to help d. helping
10. Your mother must with the housework. She looks tired.
- a. help b. be helped c. to help d. helping
11. You go to the Pyramids when you are in Giza. They're great.
- a. mustn't b. need c. should d. shouldn't
12. A: You drink any coffee. It's not good for your weak heart.
B: OK, doctor.
- a. mustn't b. shouldn't c. must d. should
13. You lies, son!
- a. shouldn't telling b. mustn't tell c. should tell d. must tell
14. I obey my parents all the time.
- a. mustn't b. don't have to c. must d. 'll have to be
15. To drive a car, one get a licence first.
- a. mustn't b. must c. shouldn't d. should
16. You look tired. I think you a few days off.
- a. must be taken b. mustn't take c. shouldn't take d. should take
17. If you are still in Egypt, you attend my wedding. You are my closest friend.
- a. ought b. must c. shouldn't d. mustn't
18. Before you go to the dentist's, you brush your teeth.
- a. ought b. shouldn't c. should d. mustn't
19. Ali is very tall. He play basketball.
- a. shouldn't b. should c. can't d. ought
20. I'm taking an early train tomorrow. I drink too much coffee.
- a. should b. must c. mustn't d. need to

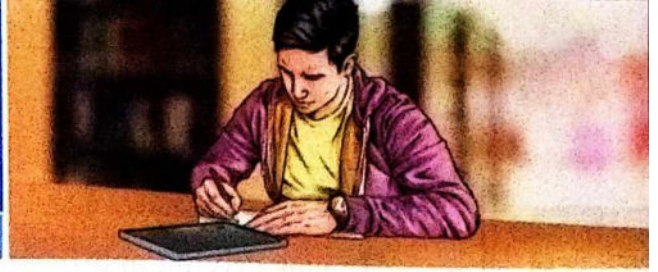
2 Special cases

21. We run to the museum because it was already closed when we got there. (إطسا ٢٠٢٣)
- a. needn't have b. didn't have to c. don't have to d. don't need to

22. When driving, you must always stop at the red light. It is a/an
 a. law b. invitation c. advice d. suggestion (٢٠٢٣ لول)
23. You them yesterday. Now, it's too late.
 a. should call b. should have called
 c. shouldn't have called d. shouldn't call
24. It is advisable to do exercise. You to follow a diet.
 a. shouldn't b. should c. mustn't d. don't have
25. **A:** Do you think I can cycle on the pavement? **B:** No, you
 a. must b. mustn't c. should d. aren't
26. If you want to get high marks, it is necessary to study hard. It's
 a/an
 a. advice b. advise c. must d. ought
27. Haven't they given you the money back yet? They that last week.
 a. should have done b. shouldn't have done
 c. should do d. shouldn't do
28. You the second project before you finished the first one completely.
 a. shouldn't start b. should start
 c. should have started d. shouldn't have started
29. **A:** I'm really tired. **B:** You to bed earlier last night.
 a. should go b. shouldn't go
 c. should have gone d. shouldn't have gone
30. **A:** I'm often tired during the day. **B:** You to bed earlier.
 a. should go b. shouldn't go
 c. should have gone d. shouldn't have gone
31. It would be to go on smoking.
 a. advisable b. better c. sensible d. insensible
32. My advice to you friends with those bad people.
 a. is to make b. is not to make c. is to be made d. is not to be made
33. I'm your boss. You leave without my permission.
 a. have to b. mustn't c. shouldn't d. must

3 Check your understanding

34. Which of the following structures is correct and logical?
 a. You mustn't get up late on holidays.
 b. You mustn't get up early on holidays.
 c. You haven't to get up late on holidays.
 d. You don't have to get up early on holidays.
35. "I have to wear my uniform to work."
 a. This is a personal obligation التزام b. This is a personal necessity
 c. I have no choice d. It is up to me



PART I GRAMMATICAL HINTS

١ عند استخدام كلمة (**research**) كإسم بمعنى (بحث / أبحاث) فهي لا تُغَد ولا تأخذ (s) الجمع وتُعامل معاملة المفرد:

ex. - research needed a lot of time and effort.

a. It b. This c. These d. Those

- Your research very important.

a. has b. have c. is d. are

٢ عند استخدام كلمة (**research**) كفعل بمعنى (يقوم بعمل أبحاث على) فإنها تساوى :

research (v) = do research on / into

ex. - Professor Mustafa is researching some new medicines.

= Professor Mustafa is doing research on / into some new medicines.

٣ كلمة (**rubbish**) بمعنى (قمامة) هي اسم لا يُغَد ولا يأخذ (s) الجمع ويُعامل معاملة المفرد:

ex. - Rubbish bacteria multiply quickly.

a. make b. have made c. are made d. makes

٤ كلمة (**bacteria**) هي اسم جمع ويأخذ فعل جمع دائماً أما المفرد منه فهو (**bacterium**) :

ex. - These bacteria killed by heating.

a. is b. are c. has been d. was

٥ يُستخدم الفعل (**burn**) بمعنى (يُحرق - يحترق / يُضئ) :

ex. - The candle burnt for six hours. يحترق / يُضئ

- He burnt some old paper. يُحرق

٦ الأسماء التي تتكون من جزئين أو طرفين مثل (**trousers – gloves – shoes ...etc.**) دائماً جمع وتأخذ فعل جمع :

ex. - My shoes to be polished.

a. needs b. is needed c. has needed d. need

٧ الأسماء التي تتكون من جزئين أو طرفين مثل (**trousers – gloves – shoes ...etc.**) يمكن أن تأخذ فعل مفرد إذا سبقها كلمة (**pair**) :

ex. - This pair of shoes to be polished.

a. needs b. is needed c. have needed d. needing

٨ لاحظ استخدام (**a / an**) بمعنى (كُل / في كُل / لكل) في التعبير التالي :

once / twice / three times ... + a / an + noun اسم

ex. - I take this medicine once a week. (= every week)

- His employer pays him five dollars an hour. (= every hour)

اسم noun + a / an + تعبيرات كمية / مسافة

ex. - He was driving at 80 kilometres an hour. (= per / every hour)

٩ كلمة (allergy) بمعنى (حساسية) تأخذ حرف الجر (to) :

ex. - I have an allergy penicillin.

a. from b. to c. with d. at

١٠ يُستخدم التعبير (at least) بمعنى (على الأقل) أو (على أقل تقدير / في أسوأ الأحوال) :

ex. - I drink at least two litres of water a day. علي الأقل.

- I may not be able to visit you, but at least I will call you. في أسوأ الأحوال

١١ البادئة (en) تحول الاسم (danger) إلى فعل بمعنى (يُعَرِّض للخطر) بينما الناهية (ous)

تحول (danger) إلى صفة بمعنى (خطير) :

danger(n)	الخطر
endanger(v)	يُعَرِّض للخطر
dangerous(adj)	خطير

ex. - A careless driver puts passengers' lives in danger.

- A careless driver endangers passengers' lives.

- A careless driver is dangerous for passengers' lives.

١٢ الفعل (grow) بمعنى (يزرع) فعل متعدي (أي أنه يحتاج مفعول)، لكن بمعنى (يصبح / ينمو)

فهو فعل لازم :

ex. - Farmers in this area grow cotton and sugar cane. يزرع

- The tree grew tall. نمت

١٣ تُستخدم (else) بمعنى (آخر) بعد الكلمات التالية :

- someone – anyone – everyone – no one
 - somebody – anybody – everybody – nobody
 - something – anything – everything – nothing
 - somewhere – anywhere – everywhere – nowhere

ex. - I don't want to go to the park. I want to go somewhere else.

- Did you say anything else at the meeting ?

١٤ تُستخدم (else) بمعنى (أيضاً) بعد أدوات الاستفهام مثل (What – Where – Who...)

ex. - Who else called me?

- What else have you eaten?

١٥ لاحظ التعبير التالي :

... make it + adj. صفة + to + inf. ... يجعل من ال... أن ...

ex. - Too much smoke makes it harder to breathe.

- Studying hard makes it easy to pass an exam.

١٦ لاحظ كيفية استخدام الفعل (spend) بمعنى (ينفق مال):

spend money on + n. / (inf. + ing)

- ex. - She spent a lot of money on new clothes.
- She spent a lot of money on buying new clothes.

١٧ ولاحظ كيفية استخدام الفعل (spend) بمعنى (يقضي وقت):

spend time + (inf. + ing) / adj.

- ex. - Ahmed spent two weeks revising physics.
- Sama spent five hours asleep in her bed.

١٨ لاحظ أن:

- ex. - It's a waste of time / money + (inf. + ing) المال / مضبعة للوقت
- It's a waste of money buying this expensive car.

١٩ لاحظ التعبير التالي: فعل ... verb + مفعول ... obj. + adj. ... صفة

- ex. - She left the door open.
- Mum always keeps the kitchen floor clean.

٢٠ لاحظ كيفية استخدام الفعل (stop) بمعنى (يمنع / يوقف):

stop + obj. + from + (inf. + ing) = stop + obj. + (inf. + ing)

- ex. - Cleaning kitchens stops bacteria from spreading.
- Cleaning kitchens stops bacteria spreading.

٢١ كلمة (soil) تعني (التربة) وتعني أيضاً (الوضع أو البيئة المناسبة لانتشار / لنمو شيء ما):

- ex. - Plants grow well in fertile soil. تربة خصبة
- Ignorance and poverty provide fertile soil for terrorism. الجهل والفقر بيئة للإرهاب.

Exercise On Language Hints

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- This team a new vaccine to COVID-19.
a. researches b. does research into
c. searches d. a & b
- I was driving at a speed of 60 km hour.
a. a b. an c. all d. of
- My son has a severe allergy woolen blankets.
a. by b. off c. to d. a & c
- Perhaps I won't be able to return all your money tomorrow, but at I will pay back half of it.
a. less b. least c. list d. last

5. People who lived with COVID- 19 patients were really
 a. dangers b. dangerously c. endangered d. a & c
6. "My cousin Ali has grown tall." The verb 'grown' in this sentence means
 a. increased in height b. planted
 c. shrank d. lengthened
7. I don't want coffee. I'd like to have something
 a. else b. also c. too d. as well
8. Your objection to the plan made it difficult for me it.
 a. accept b. accepted c. accepting d. to accept
9. Close the window before going to bed. Don't leave it
 a. open b. opens c. opening d. to open
10. We stopped him at her again.
 a. shouting b. from shouting c. a & b d. to shout
11. We spent a lot of money our new house.
 a. are decorating b. to decorate c. on decorating d. b & c
12. We spent three months our new house.
 a. decorating b. to decorate c. on decorating d. b & c

PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

1 Reading

★ Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

(سقطه ۲۳۰)

Many people don't have the knowledge or awareness of health care. This is a great problem because they can't bear the responsibility to stay healthy. So, it's the role of people who are aware to persuade them to start learning about such issues, like boosting their immune system. We all want our immune system to be strong so we can stay healthy. We can boost our immune system by eating a lot of fruit and vegetables with green leaves.

Fitness and health seem to be the same for everyone, but they have two different meanings. Fitness is the physical ability to perform work, sports, etc. while health is a condition in which the body should have resistance capacity from all diseases and all parts of the body should work well without any problem.

Health can be **maintained** by a proper diet, exercise and hygiene in which we must wash our hands before meals. To keep your body healthy, you need to do proper exercise. Usually, Sportspeople have a fit body.

They shape their body in such a way that it will be fit for their sport. But coming to healthy body is just a matter of controlling weight and making your body immune to diseases.

For a healthy and fit body, walking is very good exercise which helps in burning the excess fat in your body. A fit body doesn't mean that it should look good from outside. A fit and healthy body should be physically active and energetic and smart enough to accept any tasks given to them.

Due to more demand for a fit and healthy body, many gyms and workout centres are opened. To maintain a healthy and fit body, this requires self-control and determination.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Burning the excess fat makes us
a. enormous b. colossal c. healthy d. ill
2. Many gyms and workout centres are opened because of the demand for a fit and healthy body.
a. low b. little c. decreasing d. increasing
3. The immune system's function is to our bodies.
a. deteriorate b. infect c. protect d. damage
4. The underlined word "**maintained**" means
a. kept b. wasted c. damaged d. spent
5. Washing your hands before meals is a form of
a. sanitation b. hygiene c. personality d. energy
6. The awareness of health care is its importance.
a. recognising b. neglecting c. ignoring d. forgetting
7. How can people maintain fit and healthy bodies?
a. By eating healthy food. b. By doing exercise.
c. By doing sports. d. All of these choices.

2 Email Writing كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني

- © كتابة مجموعة من التعليمات بغرض إعطاء النصيحة المتعلقة بالصحة:
- ١ كتابة العنوان
 - ٢ اختر حوالى ستة أفكار عن الموضوع
 - ٣ اطرأ الموضوع أو الفكرة الرئيسية
 - ٤ رتب الأفكار حسب الأهمية
 - ٥ عبر عن الأفكار ببساطة ووضوح
 - ٦ اختر بعض صيغ إعطاء النصيح أو الأمر مثل:
- ... should / shouldn't, must/mustn't ... / (Drive / Don't drive ... etc).
 - ٧ اختر بعض الصيغ الترتيبية (كلمات التسلسل) مثل:
- First of all, Next, Thirdly

3 الترجمة Translation

1. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. To prevent the spread of infectious diseases or being infected, take care of your personal hygiene regularly.

(المحمودية ٢٠٢٣)

- a. اهتمامك بنظافتك الشخصية بشكل أساسي هو الطريق لمنع انتشار الأمراض المزمنة وإصاباتها.
- b. لمنع انتشار الأمراض المعدية أو العدوي بها اعتن بنظافتك الشخصية بانتظام.
- c. لوقف انتشار أي مرض مُعدي والإصابة له، عليك بالنظافة بشكل شخصي وباهتمام.
- d. منع انتشار الأمراض الفتاكة، يبدأ بالاهتمام بالنظافة بشكل شخصي ويومي ومنظم.

2. Planting trees helps the environment. They provide shade in summer and absorb carbon dioxide.

(شمال الجيزة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. غرس الأشجار يساعد البيئة، فهي توفر الظل في الصيف وتمتص ثاني أكسيد الكربون.
- b. نباتات الأشجار تساعد البيئة، فهي توفر الظل في الصيف وتمتص ثاني أكسيد الكربون.
- c. غرس الأشجار يساعد البيئة، فهي تحد من الظل في الصيف وتمتص ثاني أكسيد الكربون.
- d. غرس الأشجار يساعد البيئة، فهي توفر الظل في الصيف وتنتج ثاني أكسيد الكربون.

2. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

١. علينا الاهتمام بالنظافة الشخصية لتجنب الإصابة بالكثير من الأمراض المعدية والأوبئة الخطيرة مثل فيروس كورونا المُستجد.

(فارسيكور ٢٠٢٣)

- a. We must care about sanitation to remove infection and dangerous diseases such as new Corona virus.
- b. We shouldn't be interested in healthcare not to catch flu and dangerous disease like Corona virus.
- c. We should care about personal cleanliness to avoid catching many infections and dangerous epidemics such as new Corona virus.
- d. We should not care about personal cleanliness to avoid bringing many infections and horrible epidemics such as new Corona virus.

٢. مما لا شك فيه أن المياه الملوثة غير صالحة للشرب وخطيرة لأنها تسبب الأمراض وتدمر البيئة والحيوانات والأسماك.

- a. There is no doubt that pollution is dangerous because it causes diseases and destroys the environment, animals, and fish.
- b. There is no doubt that polluted water is drinkable and dangerous as it causes diseases and destroys the environment, animals, and fish.
- c. There is no doubt that polluted water isn't drink and dangerous as it causes diseases and destroys the environment, animals, and fish.
- d. There is no doubt that polluted water is not drinkable and dangerous as it causes diseases and destroys the environment, animals, and fish.

evacuate

- **evacuate (v)** يُخلى السكان من مكان - يُخلى الناس
- Thousands of people were evacuated from their homes because of the floods الفيضان.
- **evacuate ... from** يُخلى ... من
- The government evacuated the poor families from their old houses to protect them.
- **evacuate ... to** يُخلى ... إلى
- The government evacuated the poor families to new houses.
- **evacuation (n)** إجلاء - إخلاء المكان
- The evacuation of the people from the burning house was not easy.

respond

- **respond (to / with / by) = react (v)** يستجيب (ل) - يتجاوب (مع)
- The government responded to the problem by building new roads.
- **respond (to / that) (v)** يجب (علي) - يرد (علي)
- Give me five minutes to respond to the email.
- **respond (to) (v)** يتحسن (نتيجة ل)
- He responded well to the treatment علاج in this hospital.
- **response (to) (n)** استجابة (ل) - رد (علي)
- The manager's response to my suggestion was encouraging مُشجّع.
- I am waiting for your response to my offer.

• لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- a positive response رد إيجابي - استحسان - a negative response رد سلبي
- get / receive a response يتلقى رد - يلقي استجابة
- in response to رداً علي - استجابة ل
- **responsive (to) (adj)** غير مستجيب ل ≠ **unresponsive (to)** مستجيب ل - متجاوب مع
- My headache was responsive to this medicine.

wrap

- **wrap (v)** يغطي - يغلف - يحيط بـ - يدنّر
- Rodayna wrapped the present in colourful paper.
- He wrapped a bandage ضمادة around his injured arm.

• wrap / wrapper / wrapping (n)

مغطاء - إزار - ورق أو بلاستيك تغليف

- Remove the wrap / wrapper / wrapping of the present carefully.

• لاحظ التعبيرات والمثلزمات التالية :

- keep something under wraps يُبقي ... سرا
- He kept his illness under wraps because he didn't want his family to be sad.
- take the wraps off something يُفشي سر ...
- He took the wraps off his new invention and it was published in all newspapers.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Which of the following is correct?
 - a. I saw an asleep person.
 - b. I saw some asleep people.
 - c. I saw some asleep persons.
 - d. I saw some people asleep.
2. They're doing into the causes of swine flu انفلونزا الخنازير.
 - a. a research
 - b. research
 - c. researches
 - d. searching
3. Bacteria is to as feet is to foot.
 - a. bacteria
 - b. bacterias
 - c. bacterium
 - d. bacterial
4. Walking for half an hour every morning is good exercise to calories السعرات الحرارية.
 - a. make
 - b. burn
 - c. gain
 - d. increase
5. Strong must be kept away from children.
 - a. diseases
 - b. attractions
 - c. cleaners
 - d. infections

Advanced Exercise on Language

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. to smoke in a petrol station.
 - a. You shouldn't
 - b. It is a must
 - c. You are banned
 - d. It is banned
2. I using my mobile at home.
 - a. am forbidden from
 - b. am banned
 - c. am allowed to
 - d. am prohibited
3. It is a to get a doctor at once.
 - a. necessary
 - b. a necessity
 - c. must
 - d. should
4. He at 10, but he was almost half an hour late.
 - a. should arrive
 - b. didn't arrive
 - c. should have arrived
 - d. shouldn't arrive
5. All the reports before the end of last September.
 - a. should have written
 - b. should have been written
 - c. should write
 - d. shouldn't write

Test on Unit 7

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

التقييمات الشهرية في نهاية الكتاب

التقييمات الشهرية في نهاية الكتاب



اختبار الكتروني

1. Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. "After the violent earthquakes in Turkey, all the old houses were evacuated". The word "evacuated" can be replaced by and
 a. searched b. abandoned c. destroyed
 d. deserted e. built

(ادفو ٢٠٢٣)

2. "You should keep calm to deal with this problem." The word "calm" has a similar meaning to
 a. tired b. relaxed c. peaceful
 d. angry e. excited

(بدائق القبة ٢٠٢٣)

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. My brother has to avoid eating fish because he has an to it.
 a. energy b. allergy c. allege d. allergic

(غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)

2. My mother usually changes our twice a week. She is determined to make our bedroom healthy.
 a. drink b. food c. pudding d. bedding

(شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)

3. I was unable to take my as the film was very scary.
 a. breath b. breathe c. breathing d. breathless

(الحوامدية ٢٠٢٣)

4. To help a patient breathe normally again, we do
 a. vehicle b. CPR c. translation d. GPS

(شرق المنصورة ٢٠٢٣)

5. When my children play in their room, it becomes
 a. proper b. messy c. regular d. soapy

6. An ambulance took the injured man to the nearest hospital.
 a. immediately b. sleepy c. messily d. dirtily

7. It is the right thing to an injured person still.
 a. keep b. do c. give d. tell

8. You to eat a lot of sweets; this isn't healthy.
 a. shouldn't b. ought not c. mustn't d. needn't

(ادكو ٢٠٢٣)

9. You have got plenty of time. You hurry.
 a. must b. should c. have to d. don't have to

(منطقة أسبوط الأزهرية - أدبي ٢٠٢٣)

10. All the tasks before the end of this month.
 a. should have finish b. should have been finished
 c. should finish d. shouldn't finish

(جرجا ٢٠٢٣)

11. It is to evacuate your old house now.
 a. should b. must c. a necessity d. necessary

12. We learn computer skills at school because they are very useful.
 a. mustn't b. should c. ought d. needn't

(ساقلة ٢٠٢٣)

13. You make a loud noise in the library or you will get into trouble.
 a. can b. should c. mustn't d. must (٢٠٢٣ أسوان)
14. We have a lot of monuments in Aswan. You come and see them.
 a. ought b. mustn't c. shouldn't d. must (٢٠٢٣ أسوان)

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

(المحذوة ٢٠٢٣)

We all know the importance of water. It is the secret of life for all living things. No creature could live without it. Some doctors think that you should drink a glass of water each morning. You should drink this water first thing, before doing anything else. The temperature of the water should be similar to the temperatures of your body neither too hot nor too cold. Why should you drink this water? Water helps your body in many ways. It helps clean out your kidneys. It prepares your stomach for digestion. Water can also help your intestines work better. After drinking water, the intestines can more easily take out nutrients from our food. Water also helps us go to the bathroom more easily.

Scientists suggest that people take in 1,600 milliliters of water each day. But don't drink all of that water in one sitting. If you do, your kidneys will have to work much harder to **eliminate** it. It's better to drink some in the morning and some in the afternoon.

Some people think it's better to drink between meals and not during meals. They think water dilutes the juices produced in our stomachs. This can interfere with normal digestion. Are you drinking enough water every day? Check the color of your urine. If it is light yellow, you are probably drinking enough. If your urine is very dark yellow, you probably need to drink more water. A little more water each day could make you much healthier!

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

- What is the best title for this passage?
 - Water helps plants to grow
 - When should people drink water?
 - Animals need little water each day
 - Why should people drink water?
- Why is it helpful to drink water in the morning?
 - Your kidneys will work harder.
 - Your intestines will work well.
 - Your juices will be diluted.
 - Your urine will be pale yellow.
- Why is it better to drink between meals?
 - So you eat enough food.
 - So you don't dilute stomach juices.
 - So your urine will not smell bad.
 - So you don't overwork your kidneys.
- Why is dark-coloured urine a sign to drink more water?
 - It shows our body is healthy.
 - It means our kidneys are working too hard.
 - Less water makes the colour darker.
 - It is the same colour as our digestive juices.

5. It's important to drink enough water to
 a. have a strong heart b. be fit with strong muscles
 c. clean out your kidneys d. show your healthy body
6. The synonym of the underlined word "**eliminate**" is to
 a. remove b. reform c. replace d. retrain
7. Drinking much water once can be to your kidneys.
 a. harmful b. useful c. healthy d. beneficial

4. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

Happiness and peace of mind depend on the power of controlling one's thoughts and directing them. One has to avoid what is painful. (غرب الزقازيق ٢٠٢٣)

- a. تعتمد التعاسة وراحة البال على القدرة على التحكم في أفكار الإنسان وإدارتها، ويجب على المرء أن يتجنب ما يؤذيه.
 b. تعتمد السعادة وسلام العقل على القدرة على التحكم في أفكار الإنسان دورتها، ويجب على المرء أن يتجنب ما يؤذيه.
 c. تعتمد السعادة وراحة البال على القدرة على التحكم في أفكار الإنسان وإدارتها، ويجب على المرء أن يتجنب ما يؤذيه.
 d. تعتمد السعادة وراحة البال على القدرة على التحكم في أفكار الإنسان وإدارتها، ويجب على المرأة أن تتجنب ما قد يؤذي.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

يفضل بعض الناس حياة الريف البسيطة والصحية، حيث يستمتعون بهواء الريف النقي وجمال الطبيعة. (سنورس ٢٠٢٣)

- a. Some people prefer the simple and healthy life of the country, where they enjoy the fresh country air and the beauty of nature.
 b. Some people prefer the hard and healthy life of the country, where they enjoy the fresh country air and the beauty of nature.
 c. Some people prefer the simple and unhealthy life of the country, where they enjoy the fresh country air and the beauty of nature.
 d. Some people prefer the simple and healthy life of the country, where they enjoy the polluted country air and the beauty of nature.

5. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think Ben Gun refused to enter the form with Jim ?

2. Doctor Livesey proved to be generous. Show how.

3. What do you think of Silver as a negotiator ?

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following topic :

"The keys of good health"

.....



PART I

VOCABULARY

1

Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

benefit(ed) (n-v)	فائدة - يستفيد	hybrid(adj)	هجين
click(ed) (v-n)	ينقر - نقرة (على الماوس)	hybrid vehicle	سيارة هجينة (ذات مصدريين للطاقة)
click (n)	صوت طقطقة	invent(ed)(n)	يخترع - يخلق
familiar(adj)	مشهور - مألوف - علي علم بـ	invention(n)	اختراع
find out (phr. v)	يكتشف - يعرف	navigate(d)(v)	يُوجّه - يُجرّ - يقود
get around (phr. v)	يسافر - يتجول	robot(n)	إنسان آلي
go out (phr. v)	يخرج - يقابل بالخارج	the internet(n)	شبكة المعلومات الدولية
GPS = Global Positioning System	نظام تحديد المواقع الدولي	vehicle(n)	مركبة - وسيط / وسيلة

2

Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

abroad(adv)	خارج البلاد	fortunately(adv)	لحسن الحظ
air-conditioning(n)	(نظام) تكييف الهواء	global(adj)	عالمي
annoying(adj)	مُزعج	lead - led - led(v)	يؤدي إلي - يقود
blog(ged) (v-n)	يُدوّن - مَدَوْنَة	luxurious(adj)	مُخْم - فاخر
button(n)	زرّ	luxury(n)	الرفاهية
charge(d) (v)	يشحن	position(ed)(n-v)	موقع - مكانة - يحدد موقع
communicate(d) (v)	يتواصل - يتصل	positioning(n)	تحديد المكان
concentrate(d) (v)	يُرَكّز	post(ed) (n-v)	مُنشور (على الإنترنت) - ينشر
consequences(n)	نتائج - توابع	project(n)	مشروع - بحث
direction(n)	اتجاه - ارشاد	result(n)	نتيجة
distance(n)	مسافة	shopping list(n)	قائمة التسوق
electric(adj)	كهربائي - يعمل بالكهرباء	smart(adj)	ذكي
electricity(n)	الكهرباء	statement(n)	بيان
engine(n)	مُحرّك	terrible(adj)	فظيع
exactly(adv)	بدقة - بالضبط	useful(adj)	مُفيد
fail(ed)(v)	يفشل - يرسب	waste(d) (v)	يُسرف - يبدد
feel like (phr. v)	يشعر وكأنه - يرغب في	wheel (n)	إطار (سيارة/دراجة ...)

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
click(v) ينقر (على الماوس)	to press يضغط a button زر on a computer mouse to choose something from the screen that you want the computer to do
familiar(adj) معروف	well-known مشهور to you and easy to recognize يتعرف علي
find out(phr.v) يكتشف - يعرف	to learn something that you didn't know before
get around(phr.v) يسافر - يتجول	to travel from place to place
go out(phr.v) يخرج مع ضحيه	to leave your home to do something fun with other people
internet(n) شبكة الإنترنت	a network of computer systems that allows users all over the world to exchange information
invention(n) اختراع	a useful machine, tool, instrument جهاز , etc. that has been invented
navigate(d) (v) يحدد اتجاهه	to find which way you need to go when you are travelling from one place to another
vehicle(n) مركبه	a machine آلة with an engine محرّك that is used to take people or things from one place to another, such as a car, bus, or truck

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- It is important for people to from their spare time. (زمني ٢٠٢٣)
a. protect b. benefit c. deny d. decline
- The of her high-heeled shoes can be easily heard from outside the office. (منوف ٢٠٢٣)
a. treks b. tricks c. clicks d. tracks
- The clever pilot expertly the plane through thick fog. (أبو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)
a. clicked b. navigated c. boarded d. blogged
- It's very easy to around in that city because the public transport is cheap and efficient. (منطقة البحيرة الأزهرية - أدبي ٢٠٢٣)
a. get b. find c. stay d. say
- Scientists have a lot of things that help people live better. (أنوسيم ٢٠٢٣)
a. covered b. invented c. explored d. found

6. My friend uses if he doesn't know which road to take.
 a. vehicle b. GPS c. CRR d. knife
 (منطقة أسبوط الزهرية - أدبي ٢٠٢٣)
7. use both petrol and electricity to power their engine. (منوف ٢٠٢٣)
 a. Gas cars b. Steam trains c. Search engines d. Hybrid vehicles
8. Do you agree that the internet is the best ? (حلوان ٢٠٢٣)
 a. invitation b. invention c. recovery d. exploration
9. Old can cause more pollution because their engines don't burn petrol well. (اوسيم ٢٠٢٣)
 a. vehicles b. phones c. inventions d. computers
10. The 'G' in 'GPS' stands for
 a. Ground b. Global c. Gear d. Gas
11. Sama was very angry when she that I had eaten her chocolate.
 a. got around b. found out c. went out d. led to
12. This voice is to me. I'm sure I've heard it before.
 a. extreme b. stressful c. familiar d. beneficial
13. At weekends, my friends and I and have fun.
 a. benefit from b. find out c. go out d. write down
14. GPS is short for Global System.
 a. Population b. Positioning c. Press d. Philosophy
15. The has made communication and sharing information easier.
 a. website b. blog c. internet d. technology
16. "Click on the speaker symbol to hear the pronunciation of the word."
 Here, 'click' is a/an
 a. noun b. verb c. adverb d. adjective
17. The can do some of the dangerous jobs in factories that man used to do in the past.
 a. robot b. tablet c. internet d. consequence

2 Important Vocabulary

18. Most young people dream of travelling to make money. (رشيد ٢٠٢٣)
 a. aboard b. a board c. abroad d. broad
19. To operate this machine, just press this (التبين ٢٠٢٣)
 a. desk b. button c. patron d. bitty
20. He later realized the of his bad deeds. (كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)
 a. sequences b. consequences c. squads d. squires
21. I'm happy with my friend's positive on my project. (بولاق ٢٠٢٣)
 a. comments b. offers c. collections d. links
22. A successful student never their time.
 a. charges b. concentrates c. positions d. wastes

23. Secondary school students will take the second term exams on their tablets.
 a. written b. traditional c. smart d. social
24. I have a on the internet where I write about my opinions and activities.
 a. media b. blog c. form d. survey
25. GPS helped the police the stolen car.
 a. charge b. concentrate c. position d. waste
26. Can you this letter for me on your way home ?
 a. network b. attach c. spend d. post
27. Healthy food, doing sport and getting enough sleep to enjoying good health.
 a. cause b. improve c. lead d. appear
28. The minister is giving a on the exam system tomorrow.
 a. statement b. consequence c. button d. luxury
29. A quiet place helps you on your study.
 a. charge b. concentrate c. position d. waste
30. Make sure you have your tablet before an electronic exam.
 a. charged b. concentrated c. positioned d. wasted
31. Being the son of a wealthy businessman, he enjoyed a life of
 a. statement b. consequence c. button d. luxury

3 Definitions

32. To is to travel from place to place. (كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)
 a. find out b. go out c. get around d. feel like
33. which stands for Global Positioning System, is a radio navigation system. (أسوان ٢٠٢٣)
 a. GTS b. GVS c. GPS d. NGS
34. The is a network of computer systems that allows users all over the world to exchange information.
 a. website b. blog
 c. internet d. mobile computer
35. To is to press a button on a computer mouse to choose something from the screen that you want the computer to do.
 a. benefit b. invent c. click d. translate
36. means well-known to you and easy to recognize.
 a. Familiar b. Clear c. Stressful d. Technological
37. To is to leave your home to do something fun with other people.
 a. find out b. get around c. go out d. feel like
38. A/An is a useful machine, tool, instrument, etc. that has been invented.
 a. vehicle b. invention c. quiz d. invitation

39. To is to find which way you need to go when you are travelling from one place to another.
 a. brainstorm b. find out c. notice d. navigate
40. A/An is a machine with an engine that is used to take people or things from one place to another, such as a car, bus, or truck.
 a. account b. button c. vehicle d. robot
41. To is to learn something that you didn't know before.
 a. find out b. get around c. go out d. feel like

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

cause	a problem	يسبب مشكلة	discuss	consequences	يناقش النتائج
do	exercise	يقوم بتمرينات	give	opinions about / on / of	يعبر عن رأيه في
	... faster	يقوم بـ ... بشكل أسرع		directions	يعطى الاتجاهات
	things	يقوم بأشياء		online	يدخل على الانترنت
drive	an engine	يشغل محرك	go	long distances	يسافر / ينطلق لمسافات طويلة
	an answer to	يجد إجابة / حل لـ		abroad	يسافر للخارج
get	lost	يتوه	have	free time	لديه وقت فراغ
	nervous	يتعصب - يتوتر	make	a comment	يعلق
	somewhere	يصل مكان ما		things	يصنع أشياء

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
consequences	نتائج
familiar	مشهور
familiar	مقرب
get around	يسافر - يتجول
get around	يتغلب على
	results, effects
	well known, common
	close, dear
	travel
	overcome, get over, solve

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
consequences	نتائج
familiar	مشهور
	causes, reasons
	أسباب
	unfamiliar
	غير مشهور - غير مألوف

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

benefit		
benefit(v)	يستفيد - يفيد	- We benefit from modern technology a lot. - Modern technology benefits us a lot.
benefit(n)	استفادة - منفعة	- Modern technology has a lot of benefits.
beneficial(adj)	مفيد - إيجابي	- Modern technology is beneficial.
click		
click(v)	ينقر (على الماوس)	- Click on the link below for more information.
click(n)	نقرة (على الماوس) - صوت طقطقة	- I heard the click of the mouse.
familiar		
familiarize(v)	يتعلم - يُعلِّم	- Mr Mohammed familiarized us with the uses of "should" and "must".
familiarity(n)	المعرفة - الدراية	- Mr Mohammed increased our familiarity with the uses of "should" and "must".
familiar(adj)	على دراية بـ	- Mr Mohammed made us familiar with the uses of "should" and "must".
hybrid		
hybridise / -ize(v)	يُهجِّن	- Scientists hybridise poultry الدواجن.
hybridisation(n)	التهجين	- Are you for or against the hybridisation of poultry?
hybrid(adj)	هجين	- This type of poultry is hybrid.
navigate		
navigate(v)	يحدد اتجاه - يبحر	- GPS helps you to navigate safely.
navigation(n)	الملاحة - تحديد الاتجاه	- GPS makes navigation safe.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

argue (that) + جملة	يطالب - يثبت أن	for this reason	لهذا السبب
be familiar with	لديه معرفة بـ	know how to	يعرف كيف
discussion on how	مناقشة عن كيفية	live abroad	يعيش خارج البلاد
even if	حتى لو	make a difference to	يحسن - يصنع الفارق في
even more useful	أكثر إفادة بكثير	putting parts together	تجميع الأشياء
find ... useful to / for	يكتشف أن ... مفيد لـ	with a click of a button	بضغط زر

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

agree with	يتفق مع	go down	يلخفض - يهبط
communicate with	يتواصل مع	help with	يساعد في

concentrate on	يركز على	lead to + (n / inf. + ing)	يؤدي إلى
connect to	يتصل بـ	talk about	يتحدث عن
find out (about)	يكتشف - يعرف (عن)	walk around	يتجول في أرجاء

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

discover - invent - explore - find out

- **discover** (يكتشف شيء كان موجود ولكنه غير معروف)
 - Columbus discovered America.
 - Discover (a medicine / the femtosecond)
- **invent** (يخترع / يبتكر شيء لم يكن موجود من قبل)
 - Do you know who invented smart phones ?
- **explore** (يستكشف شيء أو مكان غريب ويعرف شيء عنه)
 - I want to explore that forest.
 - I need more time to explore this plan.
- **find out** (يكتشف (مصادفة أو بشكل غير مقصود)
 - While I was watering the plants in the garden, I found out that there was rabbit hole جحر.

do things - make things

- **do things** (يقوم بأشياء (يفعل))
 - I have many things to do.
- **make things** (يصنع أشياء)
 - This vase is one of the best things you have made.

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

- ☆ **MRQ : Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :**

1. "I'll do my best to get around this problem." The phrasal verb "get around" here means and (برج العرب ٢٠٢٣)
 - a. overcome b. travel c. invent
 - d. solve e. persuade
2. Good thinking helps me my problems. (السادات ٢٠٢٣)
 - a. for b. to c. from
 - d. with e. to find solutions to
3. It is good to a comment expressing your opinion under the post.
 - a. leave b. do c. get
 - d. take e. make

4. It is possible to say you or things, but the meaning is different.
a. are b. do c. make
d. be e. were
5. If you go, you will see surprising things.
a. board b. progress c. online
d. the shopping e. abroad
6. "The symptoms أعراض of COVID-19 have become familiar to most people." We can replace the word 'familiar' with
a. dear b. close c. known
d. strange e. common
7. No one can argue helping the poor is not a must.
a. that b. to c. with
d. on e. no word
8. I don't know how they have found the secret plan?
a. in b. out about c. up with
d. information about e. down into

★ MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Robots can a lot of things that can help us in our daily life. (شبراخيت ٢٠٢٣)
a. do b. go c. give d. take
2. Although the internet has a lot of advantages, it has also a lot of problems. (المرج ٢٠٢٣)
a. resulted b. caused c. reasoned d. ceased
3. When I lost in a strange city, I ask a passer-by to help me find my destination.
a. take b. get c. go d. do
4. "A lot of people in Cairo use the underground to get around." The phrasal verb 'get around' in this sentence means
a. travel b. overcome c. get over d. b & c
5. Scientists have this type of poultry in laboratories from different types.
a. hybeard b. hybrid c. hybridised d. hybridisation
6. A GPS helps travellers with in strange places.
a. navigate b. navigated c. navigation d. navigator

PART IV LANGUAGE

Zero, First and Second Conditionals

1

Zero Conditional :

الحالة الشرطية الصفرية :

Formation التكوين

١ تتكون الحالة الشرطية الصفرية من :

جملة مضارع بسيط , جملة مضارع بسيط + If / When إذا / عندما

- ex. - If / When we mix red and yellow, we get orange.
= We get orange if / when we mix red and yellow.

٢ يتم تكوين السؤال بـ «هل» كالتالي :

If / When + جملة مضارع بسيط , do / does + subj. + inf. ?

- ex. - If / When we mix red and yellow, do we get orange?
= Do we get orange if / when we mix red and yellow?

٣ يتم تكوين السؤال بـ «أداة استفهام» كالتالي :

If / When + جملة مضارع بسيط , Q.W. أداة استفهام , do / does + subj. + inf. ?

- ex. - If / When we mix red and yellow, what do we get?
= What do we get if / when we mix red and yellow?

Uses استخدامات

١ التعبير عن الحقائق العامة :

- ex. - If / When we freeze water, it turns into ice.

٢ التعبير عن العادات الثابتة أو المواقف التي لها نتيجة منطقية :

- ex. - If / When I'm late for work, I take a taxi.
- If / When I go to bed late, I feel tired the next morning.

٣ مع الحقيقة التي تخص موقف معين أو محددة بوقت معين يُفضل أن نستخدم الحالة الأولى وليس الحالة الصفرية :

- ex. - If you drop glass, it breaks. (حقيقة عامة - حالة صفرية)
- If you drop this glass, it will break. (موقف محدد - حالة أولى)

٤ لاحظ أن المضارع البسيط قد يكون مثبت أو منفي :

- ex. - If / when we put water in a freezer, it doesn't turn into steam بخار.

٥ لاحظ أن المضارع البسيط قد يكون معلوم أو مجهول :

- ex. - If / When water is put in a freezer, it isn't turned into steam.

2 First Conditional :

الحالة الأولى :

Formation التكوين

١ تتكون الحالة الشرطية الأولى من :

If / Unless إذا لم + will + inf. + , جملة مضارع بسيط

- ex. - If he works hard, he will earn a lot of money.
 = He will earn a lot of money if he works hard.
 = Unless he works hard, he won't earn a lot of money.
 = He won't earn a lot of money unless he works hard.

٢ يتم تكوين السؤال بـ «هل» كالتالي :

If / Unless + will + subj. + inf. ? , جملة مضارع بسيط

- ex. - If he works hard, will he earn a lot of money?
 = Will he earn a lot of money if he works hard?

٣ يتم تكوين السؤال بـ «أداة استفهام» كالتالي :

If / Unless + will + subj. + inf. ? , جملة مضارع بسيط Q.W. أداة استفهام

- ex. - If he works hard, what will he earn?
 = What will he earn if he works hard?

Uses استخدامات

١ التعبير عن مواقف قابلة للحدث في المستقبل :

- ex. - If I have enough money, I will buy a car.

٢ يمكن استخدام (can – may – might – must – should) بدلًا من (will) للتعبير عن

القدرة أو الاحتمال أو الضرورة أو النصيحة في المستقبل في جملة جواب الشرط :

- ex. - If you feel tired, you should stop the car and take a rest. (نصيحة)
 - If I want to come first, I must study hard. (ضرورة)

If - In case

- تعني (if) أن الحدث سيقع فقط إذا توفر شرط معين :

- ex. - I'll buy some sandwiches if I feel hungry. (سأشتري فقط إذا شعرت بالجوع)

- بينما تُستخدم (in case) بمعنى (في حالة) لتدل على القيام بشئ تحسبًا للحاجة إليه مستقبلاً :

- ex. - I'll buy some sandwiches in case I feel hungry.

(سأشتري في كل الأحوال تحسبًا لأنني قد اشعر بالجوع فيما بعد)

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

١ استخدم المضارع البسيط وليس المستقبل في فعل الشرط بعد (if) :

ex. - If Ahmed (will call - calls) me, I will tell him the truth.

٢ استخدم المضارع البسيط بعد (if) اذا كانت جملة جواب الشرط تتكون من احدي الصيغ التالية:

1. inf. / don't + inf. / never + inf.

(صيغة الأمر)

ex. - If anyone (finds - found - had found - will find) my mobile, please take it to the manager's office.

- Don't run away if you (will see - see - saw - seen) a dog in the street.

2. Let's + inf.

ex. - Let's go to the cinema if you (will be - are - were - had been) bored. (شاعر بالملل)

3. had better ('d better) + inf.

ex. - If mum (has - had - had had - will have) too much housework, you'd better help her.

4. would rather ('d rather) + inf.

ex. - I'd rather revise for tomorrow's exam if I (will want - want - wanted - had wanted) to get high marks.

5. can / could you + inf.?

- في حالة الطلب المهذب :

ex. - If I (will need - need - needed - had needed) money, could you lend me some?

6. It is + صفة + to + inf.

ex. - It is easy to get married if I (will find - find - found - had found) a good flat.

٣ استخدم (will + inf.) في جملة جواب الشرط إذا كان فعل الشرط أحد الصيغ التالية:

1. If + subj. + (would like / would love / would prefer)

ex. - If you'd like to travel by plane, I (get - will get - would get - would have got) a ticket for you.

2. If + subj. + am / is / are + inf. + ing (مضارع مستمر للمستقبل)

ex. - If you're travelling to Aswan next week, I (go - will go - would go - would have gone) with you.

3. If + subj. + have / has + p.p. (مضارع تام)

ex. - If you have done your homework, I (let - will let - would let - would have let) you go out.

3 Second Conditional :

الحالة الثانية :

Formation التكوين

١ تتكون الحالة الشرطية الثانية من :

If / Unless - إذا لم + جملة ماضى بسيط + would + inf.

- ex. - If he studied more, he would get better marks.
 = He would get better marks if he studied more.
 = He wouldn't get better marks unless he studied more.

٢ يتم تكوين السؤال بـ «هل» كالتالى :

If / Unless + جملة ماضى بسيط , would + subj. + inf. ?

- ex. - If he studied more, would he get better marks?

٣ يتم تكوين السؤال بـ «أداة استفهام» كالتالى :

If / When + جملة ماضى بسيط , Q.W. أداة استفهام + would + subj. + inf. ?

- ex. - If he studied more, what would he get?
 = What would he get if he studied more?

Uses استخدامات

١ تعبر الحالة الثانية عن مواقف غير محتملة الحدوث فى المستقبل :

- ex. - I'm extremely overweight. If I lost much weight, I would run in tomorrow's marathon.
 - فى المثال السابق يقول المتحدث أنه زائد جدًا فى الوزن، ولو أنه فقد الكثير من الوزن سيشارك فى ماراثون الغد، لكن هذا غير منطقي لأنه لا أحد يفقد الكثير من الوزن فى يوم واحد)
 - أما إذا كان الموقف محتملاً فنستخدم الحالة الأولى، لاحظ المثال التالى :
 - I'm fit. If I have the chance, I will run in tomorrow's marathon.

٢ التعبير عن مواقف تخيلية مستحيلة الحدوث فى المضارع أو المستقبل :

- ex. - If people had wings, they would fly like birds.

٣ إعطاء النصيحة بالصيغة (If I were) :

- ex. - You should study hard.
 = If I were you, I would study hard.

٤ يمكن استخدام (could - might) بدلاً من (would) للتعبير عن الإمكانية أو الاحتمال أو النصيحة والافتراض :

- ex. - If I were a bird, I could fly high in the sky.

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

- ١ لاحظ إمكانية استخدام (**was / were**) مع المفرد في حالة التخيّل و النصيحة :
- I have much work today. If I **was / were** not busy, I would play football.
- ٢ الأفعال (**read - hit - put - cut**) لا تتغير عند تصريفها وتعتبر في الماضي البسيط إذا لم يضاف لها (s) مع (**he - she - it**) :
- If he **read** today's newspapers, he (will - would) know the latest news.
- ٣ إذا كان فعل الشرط (**had + noun**) تكون الجملة حالة ثانية و نختار (**would + inf.**) :
- If I **had** a car, I (will drive - would drive - would have driven) you to the airport.
- ٤ إذا كان فعل الشرط (**had to + inf.**) تكون الجملة حالة ثانية و نختار (**would + inf.**) :
- If she **had to** work, she (will look - would look - would have looked) for a job as a secretary.
- ٥ إذا كان جواب الشرط (**would have + noun**) تكون الجملة حالة ثانية و نختار ماضي بسيط :
- If my son (pass - passed - had passed) the exam, he would have a present.
- ٦ إذا كان جواب الشرط (**would have to + inf.**) تكون الجملة حالة ثانية و نختار ماضي بسيط :
- If Nada (gets - got - had got) late, she would have to take a taxi.

Remember

4

Third Conditional :

الحالة الثالثة :

Statement الجملة الخبرية	If + subj. + had + p.p. , subj. + would / could / might + have + p.p. ex. - If he had trained hard, he would / could / might have won yesterday's match. = He would / could / might have won yesterday's match if he had trained hard.
Yes / No Question السؤال بـ «هل»	Would / Could / Might + subj. + have + p.p. + if + subj. + ... had + p.p.? ex. - If he had trained hard, would he have won yesterday's match ? = Would he have won yesterday's match if he had trained hard ?
(Wh-) Question السؤال بأداة استفهام	Q.W. + would / could / might + subj. + have + p.p. + if + subj. + ... had + p.p.? ex. - If he had trained hard, what would he have done ? = What would he have done if he had trained hard ?

Uses استخدامات

١ تستخدم الحالة الثالثة لتخيل عكس ما حدث في الماضي :

ex. - I worked hard on this project. If I hadn't worked hard, I wouldn't have succeeded.

٢ تستخدم الحالة الثالثة للتعبير عن الندم على شيء حدث في الماضي :

ex. - The traffic policeman fined me yesterday. If I had left my car in the parking area, I wouldn't have been fined.

General Notes on Conditionals ملاحظات عامة على الجمل الشرطية

١ يمكن استخدام الروابط التالية بدلا من (if) ويأتي بعدها جملة :

جملة + بشرط أن = providing (that) = provided (that) طالما = If = as long as

ex. - If he takes the medicine, he will get better.

- As long as he takes the medicine, he will get better.

٢ يمكن استخدام حروف الجر والظروف التالية بدلا من (if) ويأتي بعدها (inf. + ing / noun) :

If + جملة = with / by / in case of + noun / (inf. + ing)

ex. - If she comes first, she will get a car as a present.

- In case of coming first, she will get a car as a present.

- With your help, I'll succeed. = (If you help me, I'll succeed.)

٣ يمكن استخدام (unless) بدلا من (if) مع مراعاة النفي والإثبات حسب المعنى :

ex. - If she sleeps early, she will get up early.

- Unless she sleeps early, she won't get up early.

٤ يمكن استخدام (without / but for) بدلا من (unless) ويأتي بعدها (inf. + ing / noun) :

Unless + جملة = Without / But for لولا / بدون + (inf. + ing) / noun

ex. - Unless he has enough money, he won't buy this flat.

- Without (having) enough money, he won't buy this flat.

٥ يمكن استخدام (If it weren't for) بدلا من (unless) في الحالة الثانية ويأتي بعدها (inf. + ing / noun) :

Unless + جملة ماضى بسيط = If it weren't for + (inf. + ing) / noun

ex. - Unless he had enough money, he wouldn't buy this flat.

- If it weren't for (having) enough money, he wouldn't buy this flat.

If I were you, I'd + inf. = You + should / had better / ought to + inf.

- ex. - You'd better eat healthy food.
- If I were you, I would eat healthy food.

٧ لاحظ استخدام (Were) بدلاً من (If) في الحالة الثانية :

If + جملة ماضى بسيط = Were + subj. + (to + inf.) ...

- ex. - If you told me, I would understand.
- Were you to tell me, I would understand.

لاحظ أنه إذا كانت (were) فعلاً أساسياً للجملة لا تستخدم (to + inf.) بعد الفاعل :

- ex. - If I were a good footballer, I would be famous.
- Were I a good footballer, I would be famous.

٨ لاحظ استخدام (Had) بدلاً من (If) في الحالة الثانية عندما تكون فعلاً أساسياً للشرط :

If + subj. + had + ... = Had + subj. + ...

- ex. - If I had enough time, I would help you.
- Had I enough time, I would help you.

كما يمكن استخدام (Had) بدلاً من (If) في الحالة الشرطية الثالثة :

If + subj. + had + p.p. = Had + subj. + p.p.

- ex. - If he had already left, I would have called him.
= Had he already left, I would have called him.

٩ لاحظ صيغة المفعول لأجله (causative) في الجمل الشرطية :

If + subj. + had + obj. + p.p. (حالة ثانية) مفعول لأجله

If + subj. + had had + obj. + p.p. (حالة ثالثة) مفعول لأجله

- ex. - If he had his camera repaired, he would lend it to me.
- If he had had his camera repaired, he would have lent it to me.

١٠ يمكن استخدام (p.p.) أو صفة بعد (if) كما يلي :

- ... if + p.p. / adj. صفة

- ... if + it / this / that / he / she ... + be + p.p. / p.p.

- ex. - I will buy another fan if needed.
= I will buy another fan if that is needed.
- She wouldn't use her mobile at work again if warned.
= She wouldn't use her mobile at work again if she was warned.
- I would have helped you if possible.
= I would have helped you if it had been possible.

General Exercise On Language

● Apply

● Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. If Magda a language course, she would be able to speak to foreigners. (شرق المنصورة ٢٠٢٣)
a. does b. will do c. did d. would do
2. What do if you get lost in a big city? (منوف ٢٠٢٣)
a. you will b. will you c. would you d. you would
3. If it rains tomorrow, we the picnic. (حلوان ٢٠٢٣)
a. will have to cancel b. had to cancel
c. cancel d. would cancel
4. What you do if you lost your mobile? (أسوان ٢٠٢٣)
a. will b. do c. would d. did
5. I would travel to Alexandria if my car (المعصرة ٢٠٢٣)
a. had checked b. was checked c. is check d. had been checked
6. What would you do if your friend an accident? (المعصرة ٢٠٢٣)
a. have b. would have c. has d. had
7. If Ali all his money, he would have to borrow. (المرج ٢٠٢٣)
a. spends b. spent c. had spent d. was spending
8. If I much money, I would have a villa. (أبو المطاير ٢٠٢٣)
a. have b. had had c. had d. have had
9. If you water these plants, they faster. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)
a. grown b. would grow c. will grow d. grew
10. If Samia the test, she will go to Cairo University next year.
a. would pass b. will pass c. passes d. passed
11. You can't get a driving license you are over 18 years old. (منطقة البحيرة الأزهرية - علمي ٢٠٢٣)
a. without b. in case of c. if d. unless

2 Special cases

12. Were you the truth, I would help you. (جرجا ٢٠٢٣)
a. tell b. told c. to tell d. telling
13. their help; I wouldn't have done any remarkable progress. (ساقية ٢٠٢٣)
a. If b. Unless c. Without d. If only

14. I will buy some tablets I feel a headache in the meeting room.
There is no pharmacy near here. (ساقلة ٢٠٢٣)
- a. if b. in case c. unless d. a & b
15. Had I had a good memory, I his name. (الزيتون ٢٠٢٣)
- a. would remember b. will remember
c. remembered d. would have remembered
16. He make that mistake if he read the question carefully. (البحيرة ٢٠٢٣)
- a. won't b. would c. should d. wouldn't
17. In case of very fast, he'd have an accident. (الحوامدية ٢٠٢٣)
- a. had driven b. drove c. driven d. driving
18. They have not decided on they will leave or not. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)
- a. if b. weather c. whether d. where
19. he to study harder, he could get high marks. (أبو قرقاص ٢٠٢٣)
- a. Had b. Should c. Were d. In case
20. If he read a lot on his mobile, he his eyes. (ادفو ٢٠٢٣)
- a. damaged b. won't damage c. would damage d. will damage

3 Check your understanding

21. If Marwa were a doctor, she would help the injured woman. This means that Marwa (اطسا ٢٠٢٣)
- a. can't help the injured woman since she isn't a doctor
b. wasn't a doctor so she couldn't help the injured woman
c. wasn't a doctor but she could help the injured woman
d. isn't a doctor as she can't help the injured woman



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

advantages (n)	مزايا	feedback (n)	تغذية راجعة - تقييم
app = application (n)	تطبيق	quiz (zed) (n - v)	مسابقة أسئلة - امتحان
application (n)	طلب التحاق		قصير - يستجوب
chat(ted) (v - n)	يحدثش - دردشة	translation (n)	ترجمة
disadvantages (n)	عيوب		

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

account (n)	حساب (مصرفي / على الإنترنت)	negative (adj)	سلبي
admit(ted) (v)	يقر بـ - يعترف بـ	offer (ed) (v)	عرض - يعرض
argue(d) (v)	يجادل - يناقش	online (adj / adv)	على الإنترنت
brainstorm(ed) (n-v)	العصف الذهني - يستثير الفكر	philosopher (n)	فيلسوف
century (n)	قرن (١٠٠ عام)	popular (adj)	محبوب - ذو شعبية
collection (n)	مجموعة	positive (adj)	إيجابي
comment(n)	تعليق	press(ed) (v - n)	يضغط - ضغطة
completely (adv)	تماماً	press(n)	الصحافة
conclusion (n)	خاتمة - خلاصة	printing (n - adj)	الطباعة - مطبوع
cost-cost (v - n)	يتكلف - التكلفة	progress(n)	التقدم
details (n)	تفاصيل	seem(ed) (v)	يبدو
device(n)	جهاز - أداة	share(d) (v)	يشارك - ينشر على الإنترنت
documentary (n-adj)	برنامج وثائقي - توثيق	software(n)	برامج رقمية
download(ed) (v - n)	يُنزل - التنزيل (من الإنترنت)	stress(n)	الضغط العصبي / الإجهاد
electronic (adj)	الالكتروني	stressful(adj)	شاق / مُجهَد - مُرْجَع
extreme(adj)	شديد - متطرف	studies (n)	دراسات
guess(ed) (v)	يُخمن	summary(n)	ملخص
human being	إنسان	technological(adj)	تكنولوجي
imagine(d) (v)	تُخيل	technology(n)	التكنولوجيا
memory(n)	الذاكرة	tip(n)	نصيحة

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
app(n) تطبيق	software برنامج on your smartphone
chat(v) يدرش	to communicate with other people online
feedback(n) تَغذية راجعة	information about how well or badly you did something
quiz(n) مسابقة أسئلة	questions to find out how much you know
translation(n) ترجمة	words changed into another language

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- He enjoys with his online friends in his free time. (ادفو ٢٣٠٢)
a. cycling b. printing c. benefiting d. chatting
- I've learnt how to be good at from and into English.
a. translation b. feedback c. hybridisation d. navigation
- Google Store is full of useful
a. vehicles b. applications c. apps d. b & c
- One of the so many of this small car is that it does not use much petrol.
a. disadvantages b. advantages c. demerits d. downsides
- "I had a ten-minute chat with my friend." In this sentence, 'chat' is a/an
a. noun b. verb c. adverb d. adjective
- I asked my friend to do a with me.
a. quiz b. suggestion c. mistake d. comment
- My form was sent by email to the company.
a. comment b. communication c. application d. development
- Criticism and advice are kinds of
a. buttons b. robots c. philosophy d. feedback
- Not everything in modern technology is good. There're surely some
a. advantages b. disadvantages c. merits d. upsides

2 Important Vocabulary

- The teacher asked us to read the text and make
a. research b. surveys c. comments d. jobs
- Modern like mobiles and other devices has made life easier.
a. post b. message c. technology d. business

12. Most young people prefer news websites to printed newspapers.
a. traditional b. paper c. offline d. online
13. I expect he won't accept the It is not a good price for his car.
a. comment b. offer c. collection d. printing
14. Colour is better but costly فكلية so publishers prefer black and white.
a. comment b. offer c. collection d. printing
15. The players of our team find it difficult to play well in the heat of some African countries.
a. extreme b. stressed c. online d. beneficial
16. I found a good of apps on Google Play.
a. comment b. offer c. collection d. printing
17. **A:** Did Ahmed leave the exam room? **B:** I not.
a. affect b. crash c. do d. guess
18. I this file from an educational website.
a. uploaded b. downloaded c. clicked d. posted
19. A compass البوصلة is a that helps us know directions.
a. device b. summary c. software d. progress
20. You end your essay with the
a. title b. introduction c. body d. conclusion
21. She is not strong enough to do all this work.
a. extreme b. stressful c. familiar d. beneficial
22. Facebook is one of the most social networking sites.
a. complex b. complicated c. printed d. popular
23. Applications are that helps you do some jobs on a computer or mobile.
a. device b. summary c. software d. progress
24. My laptop has a terabyte
a. tip b. memory c. website d. century
25. **A:** Do you have a / an on Telegram? **B:** No, but I have one on Facebook.
a. account b. press c. button d. progress
26. I like watching about ancient Egyptian civilization.
a. consequences b. cycles c. documentaries d. technology
27. I think the is not enough. You need to read the whole report.
a. device b. summary c. software d. progress
28. My two daughters some qualities. They both are intelligent, hard-working and helpful.
a. share b. cycle c. communicate d. save
29. **A:** Do you think printing is still effective?
B: Online one is now more effective.
a. progress b. press c. danger d. software
30. Sama has made clear in her studies.
a. device b. summary c. software d. progress

3 Definitions

31. A/An is a software on your smartphone. (الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢٣)
 a. memory card b. app c. email d. device
32. A is questions to find out how much you know.
 a. quiz b. tip c. guess d. map
33. To is to communicate with other people online.
 a. evacuate b. stress c. chat d. comment
34. means information about how well or badly you did something.
 a. Conclusion b. Progress c. Translation d. Feedback

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

find	an answer to	يجد إجابة / حل لـ	do	well/badly	يؤدي بشكل جيد / سوء
give	... better understanding	يساعد ... على فهم أفضل	lose	interest in	يفقد اهتمامه بـ
	... an address	يعطى ... عنوان	make	progress	يحقق تقدم
	specific examples	يعطى أمثلة محددة	offer	a chart	يرسم لوحة أو جدول بيانات
take	time/many years	يستغرق وقت / سنوات كثيرة	have	advantages	يقدم مميزات
				an effect on	له أثر على
press	a button	يضغط زر		tests	لديه اختبارات
				fun	يمرح - يلهو

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
advantages	مزاي - إيجابيات
extreme	شديد / متطرف
stressful	شاق / مُجهِد - مُزعِج
	merits, upsides, benefits
	radical, extremist, unreasonable, fanatical
	exhausting, hard, tough

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
advantages	disadvantages, demerits, downsides, problems
expert	inexpert
extreme	moderate, mild, tolerant
online	offline, disconnected
stressful	relaxing, easy
	مساوي - عيوب
	عديم الخبرة
	معتدل
	غير متصل بالإنترنت
	مريح / سهل

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

chat		
chat(v)	يُدرِّش	- I chatted with some friends.
chat(n)	دردشة	- I had a chat with some friends.
chatting(n)	الدردشة	- Chatting may waste our time.
invention		
invent(v)	يُخترع	- Do you know who invented the mobile phone?
invent(v)	يُخترق / يُؤلف	- Liars invent stories to trick others.
invention(n)	اختراع	- The computer is a useful invention.
inventor(n)	مُخترع	- Do you know who is the inventor of the mobile phone ?
inventive(adj)	مُبتكر / مُبدع	- Mr Ashraf is an inventive teacher.
translation		
translate(v)	يُترجم	- I translate from English into Arabic.
translation(n)	ترجمة	- Translation from one language to another is not easy for some students.
translator(n)	مُترجم	- Translators do not earn much money.
translated(adj)	مُترجم	- Translated scientific texts are sometimes difficult to understand.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

be seen as	يُنظر إليه كـ - يُعتَقَد أنه	on their own	بمفردهم - دون مساعدة
for or against	مع أو ضد	personal details	التفاصيل الشخصية
free time	وقت فراغ	put ... in order of ...	يُرتب ... حسب
help me find	يساعد في إيجاد	reason for	سبب لـ
I guess not	لا أعتقد ذلك	stop people enjoying	يمنع الناس من الاستمتاع بـ
In conclusion	الخلاصة هي	that seems extreme	ذلك يبدو موقف متشدد
make life easier	يجعل الحياة أسهل	the printing press	الصحافة المطبوعة
on the one hand	من ناحية	I would argue that	يمكنني أن أقول أن
on the other hand,	من الناحية الأخرى		

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

add ... to	يُضيف ... إلى	live without	يُحيا بدون
change ... into	يُحوّل ... إلى	think about	يُفكر في
do without	يفعل ... بدون - يستغني عن	turn on	يُشغّل
feel about	يشعر تجاه	write ... down	يُدوّن - يُسجّل

translate - interpret

• translate

- I have translated a lot of film scripts into Arabic.

يُترجم (كلام مكتوب أو شفهي)

• interpret

- Dr Amr interprets the coach's instructions to the players.

يترجم فوري (مع إمكانية التفسير)

download - upload

• download (v) يَنْزِلُ ملف ≠ upload (v) يرفع ملف

- I downloaded some books about farming.

• download (n) ملف مرفوع على الانترنت ≠ upload (n) ملف مُنْزَل من الانترنت

- She keeps her downloads in this folder.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- download ... from يَنْزِلُ من

- download to / onto يَنْزِلُ إلى

- upload ... to يرفع على

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

• ★ MRQ : Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

- The with this iPhone is that it is costly. (طلقا ٢٠٢٣)
a. benefit b. downside c. reason
d. problem e. cause
- The verb 'make' collocates with
a. research b. a mistake c. survey
d. the shopping e. progress
- Exercise is something that can be
a. had b. gone c. done
d. taken e. caused
- Learning a foreign language takes
a. time b. part c. the place
d. years e. buttons
- "Increasing air pollution is one of the disadvantages of this factory."
The word 'disadvantages' here is antonymous with
a. merits b. upsides c. downsides
d. negatives e. bad effects
- "I do not agree with your extreme ideas." The adjective 'extreme' in this context is a synonym of
a. severe b. moderate c. exaggerated
d. normal e. usual

• **MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. We add the prefix to form the antonym of the word "expert".
a. un- b. dis- c. in- d. ir-
(بولاق ٢٠٢٣)
2. "Here are a lot of disadvantages for the internet." The antonym of 'disadvantage' is
(Tablet Exam 2022)
a. drawbacks b. demerits c. problems d. benefits
3. We are trying to a reasonable answer to this question.
a. do b. cause c. find d. go
4. He was surprised when I told him how badly his son had in the exam.
a. left b. done c. got d. taken
5. As a student, I don't have enough time to online for fun.
a. have b. cause c. find d. go
6. Teachers specific examples to make their points clear.
a. offer b. give c. do d. cause
7. I need someone to this research into English.
a. translate b. translation c. translator d. translated
8. I need a to help me with this research.
a. translate b. translation c. translator d. translated
9. The new decision is seen a step towards developing education.
a. by b. as c. from d. on
10. The government plans to change this desert area a new town.
a. over b. by c. into d. from
11. I have interest in watching football matches because of blind fanaticism among fans.
a. had b. got c. lost d. gained

PART III

READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

Is technology always a good thing?

Lesson 3 WB page 94

This question has been asked for many years but has anyone found an answer? On the one hand, there are always **dangers**⁽¹⁾ with new technology. More than two thousand years ago, a **Greek**⁽²⁾ **philosopher**⁽³⁾ called Socrates was worried that writing things down would stop students using their **memories**⁽⁴⁾. In the 16th **century**⁽⁵⁾, following the invention of the **printing press**⁽⁶⁾, a **Swiss**⁽⁷⁾ philosopher called Conrad Gessner thought that books would give people too much information.

- (١) مخاطر
- (٢) يوناني
- (٣) فيلسوف
- (٤) الذاكرة
- (٥) قرون (١٠ عام)
- (٦) الصحافة المطبوعة
- (٧) سويسري

3 Video script section

Will people need to learn **foreign languages**⁽¹⁾ in the future ? Or will technology speak them for us ? Some people think that if apps and translation **software**⁽²⁾ continue to improve over the next ten to twenty years, language lessons will become **a thing of the past**⁽³⁾.

But can an app or a piece of software really communicate like a person can ?

They can **definitely**⁽⁴⁾ translate words, or even whole sentences, from one language to another. But they can't smile at the person you're talking to and show them that you really **mean**⁽⁵⁾ what you're saying.

When you speak in a foreign language, you speak to another **human**⁽⁶⁾ being and human beings **find it difficult to**⁽⁷⁾ become friends with smartphones or computers - we are **programmed**⁽⁸⁾ to **prefer**⁽⁹⁾ other human beings. That's why we can **feel sure**⁽¹⁰⁾ that learning languages still has a future.

(1) اللغات الأجنبية

(2) برامج الحاسوب

(3) شيء من الماضي

(4) بالتأكيد

(5) تعلى / تقصد

(6) إنسان

(7) يجد من الصعوبة أن

(8) يبرمج

(9) يفضل

(10) يشعر بالتأكد

PART IV LANGUAGE

راجع شرح القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثاني.

تنويه

General Exercise On Language

● Apply

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

- If he faster, he would catch the bus. (منطقة أسيوط الأزهرية - أدبي ٢٠٢٣)
a. went b. goes c. gone d. going
- What do if you get lost in a big city is to check your GPS.
a. you will b. will you c. would you d. you would
- Grandma usually a short nap if she feels tired. (جهينة ٢٠٢٣)
a. will take b. takes c. took d. take
- If you what I say, ask your mother. (كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)
a. won't believe b. didn't believe c. don't believe d. hadn't believed
- If we more trees, we will save our planet. (كوم حماده ٢٠٢٣)
a. plants b. plant c. would plant d. will plant
- If you asked me, I you. (زفتي ٢٠٢٣)
a. help b. am helping c. would help d. will help
- If I had a motorbike, I to Giza every now and then. (الدوامية ٢٠٢٣)
a. will go b. would go c. would have gone d. go

8. If she the competition, she'd probably win a prize.
a. will enter b. enters c. entered d. had entered
9. You always water if you mix hydrogen and oxygen.
a. got b. will get c. would get d. get
10. He wouldn't take a taxi if someone for him at the airport.
a. had waited b. waited c. has waited d. waiting
11. How she feel if she read this novel again?
a. does b. did c. would d. will
12. If I a holiday, I would have a swim in the sea.
a. had had b. have had c. had d. don't have
13. he felt tired, he'd go to bed early.
a. But for b. With c. If d. Without
14. They won't come to the party we invite them.
a. without b. unless c. in case of d. if
15. If I enough money for the project, I wouldn't have to borrow from the bank.
a. had had b. didn't have c. had d. have
16. If people don't get enough food, they weak.
a. became b. would become
c. become d. would have become
17. If metals are cooled, they.....
a. will contract b. would contract c. contract d. contracted
18. I'd fly if I a bird.
a. will be b. had been c. were d. am
19. I'd have been pleased with you if you the homework.
a. hadn't done b. had done c. would do d. do

2 Special cases

20. her courage, the kid wouldn't have been saved. (البجيرة ٢٠٢٣)
a. If b. Unless c. In case of d. Without
21. If he read the news, he everything about the terrible accident.
a. may know b. will know c. would know d. know
22. Malak to read the book, she would get much information. (شبراخيت ٢٠٢٣)
a. If b. Unless c. Were d. Should
23. I'd rather start now if I to finish in time. (سمود ٢٠٢٣)
a. have b. don't have c. had d. had had
24. If this trip cost much money, I join it.
a. am not b. don't c. won't d. wouldn't
25. It's important to take your medicine if you ill.
a. are felt b. feel c. felt d. had felt
26. We'd better train hard if we to win the match.
a. had wanted b. wanted c. want d. don't want

- ### 3 Check your understanding

- UNIT EIGHT : Robots 81



PART I

GRAMMATICAL HINTS

١ لاحظ التعبيرات التالية مع (help):

help + obj. المفعول + inf. = help + obj. مفعول + to + inf.

ex. - My teacher helped me the lesson.

- a. understanding b. to understand c. understand d. b & c

help + inf. / to + inf.

ex. - She agreed to help the housework.

- a. do b. to do c. doing d. a & b

help + obj. مفعول + with + n.

ex. - I promised to help mum with the cooking.

٢ لاحظ التعبيرات التالية مع (make):

make يجعل + obj. مفعول + adj. صفة

ex. - Your call has made me

- a. happily b. happiness c. happy d. happening

make + obj. مفعول + inf. (معلوم)

obj. المفعول + be + made + to + inf. (مجهول)

ex. - Mr Hossam made Omar the essay again.

- a. write b. to write c. writing d. to writing

ex. - Omar was made the essay again.

- a. write b. to write c. writing d. to writing

٣ لاحظ استخدام التعبيرات التالية:

- on the one hand من ناحية

- on the other hand من الناحية الأخرى (للتعبير عن الرأي المخالف)

ex. - Smartphones have advantages and disadvantages. On the one hand, they have made life and communication easier. On the other hand, they have made people lazy.

٤ لاحظ استخدام (to + inf.) بعد أدوات الاستفهام :

- ex. - I am really confused متحير. I don't know what to do.
- Can you tell me where to park my car ?
- I asked her how to feed the baby.

٥ لاحظ الفرق بين :

- on his / her ... own بمفرده / دون مساعدة = by himself / herself ... = alone
- of his / her ... own ملكه / يخصه

- ex. - He has a private car. He has a car his own.
a. with b. of c. from d. on
- No one lives with her. She lives her own.
a. with b. of c. from d. on

٦ لا تجمع (million... - thousand - hundred) بعد الأرقام أو (... several - many - a few) :

- ex. - The Pharaohs had a great civilization five years ago.
a. a thousand b. thousands c. thousand d. few thousand

٧ تُستخدم (such) بمعنى (مثل هذا) قبل اسم أو صفة يتبعها اسم :

- ex. - I can't eat such food.
- They never miss such important meetings.

٨ لاحظ أن :

called = who / which / that is called

- ex. - I have a daughter called Rodayna.
= I have a daughter who is called Rodayna.

٩ يمكن أن تُستخدم (following) كحرف جر بمعنى (بعد) :

- ex. - Following the birth of her second son, she decided to leave her job.
= After the birth of her second son, she decided to leave her job.

١٠ لاحظ الصيغة التالية للنفي المُطلق :

لم / لن ... مرة أخرى على الإطلاق ... not + ... + ever again.

- ex. - I promised that I wouldn't smoke again.
a. never b. ever c. every d. any

١١ لاحظ الصيغة التالية :

The reason that + جملة + is so that ... السبب في ... هو لكي ...

- ex. - The reason that he works hard so that he can pass his exams.
a. have b. has c. was d. is

١٢ كلمة (internet) غالباً تسبقها (the) :

- ex. - The internet has made information exchange easier.
(Not: Internet has ...)

١٣ كلمة (the internet) يسبقها حرف الجر (on) للتعبير عن القيام بشيء على شبكة الإنترنت :

ex. - I had a lot of friends on the internet. (Not: ... by the internet)

١٤ كلمة (online) تُستخدم كصفة أو كظرف بمعنى (مُتصل بالإنترنت / على الإنترنت / عن طريق الإنترنت) :

ex. - Online shopping is now common. (صفة)

- You can buy anything you want online. (ظرف)

١٥ لاحظ أن (lead to) والتي تعني (يؤدي إلي) يأتي بعدها اسم أو (inf. + ing) :

ex. - Hard work leads to success النجاح.

- Smoking leads to having a lot of health problems.

Exercise On Language Hints

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- I'm sure you will solve this problem your own. (جھينة ٢٠٢٣)
a. on b. from c. with d. by
- What is the advantage of having an expensive car ? (كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)
a. so b. too c. such d. very
- has become more familiar.
a. Shopping online b. Online shopping
c. a & b d. On a shopping line
- Using pesticides المبيدات leads the crops.
a. pollute b. to pollute c. polluting d. to polluting
- I asked him not to waste his time chatting on
a. internet b. the internet c. an internet d. a & b
- the manager's unfair decision, I decided to resign يستقيل.
a. On b. During c. Following d. Because
- I helped Sama the housework.
a. doing b. to do c. do d. b & c
- I helped Sama the housework.
a. with b. on c. at d. from
- My father's recovery شفاء made us
a. happy b. feel happy c. to feel happy d. a & b
- We were made by my father's recovery.
a. happily b. feel happy c. to feel happy d. a & b
- I want to know where my car.
a. park b. to park c. parking d. to parking
- I have a tablet my own. I bought it a week ago.
a. on b. of c. in d. b & c
- I won't agree to such
a. plan b. a plan c. a bad plan d. b & c

PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

1 Reading

★ Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (دکتر نس ۲۰۲۳)

For the last two years I have been living in Bangladesh, with my parents and my baby sister. We moved here from England and at first, I didn't like it because I missed all my school friends. Most students arrive at school in the morning, books in hand, and return home in the afternoon, with a lot of homework. This is the idea we have when we think of schools. However, some schools, like the boat schools in Bangladesh, are a little different from what I was used to.

Twice a year, there are heavy rainstorms in Bangladesh, which cover the area with lots of water. This leaves millions of people without clean water, electricity and other important things. It becomes difficult for children to go to schools and for those schools to keep their doors open. To solve these problems, some people thought of a brilliant idea to help the children. **They** built houses, health centres and schools that move around on top of the water.

Now, there are almost 100 boat schools. Each of these schools gets electricity from the sun and has one laptop computer with internet and even a small library. These boat schools are a school and a school bus, all in one. Whenever there's too much water and every other service is closed, these types of schools are still open. They pick up their students from the side of the rivers, and then stop somewhere so that classes can begin. After the lessons are finished, the boat schools return the students to their homes and another group of students is picked up. About 70,000 children have used the boat schools since they started, fifteen years ago.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. What does the writer say happens every six months in Bangladesh?
 - a. The country doesn't have enough water.
 - b. Lots of water brings problems to the country.
 - c. Schools close for cleaning.
 - d. Students don't want to go to schools.
2. What problem do many children have at different times of the year?
 - a. They have too much homework when it rains.
 - b. Their parents have to buy a boat for them.
 - c. They cannot use things that need electricity.
 - d. They don't have their laptops.

3. Where can people see a doctor when there is too much water?
 - a. At the health center, on the river.
 - b. Inside the library.
 - c. In the school that is now closed.
 - d. In the school that is now opened.
4. Where does the writer say children can see information online?
 - a. At the health centres
 - b. On the side of the river
 - c. At school when it is open
 - d. On the boat schools
5. What is the best title for the article?
 - a. The First Day at School
 - b. An Unusual School
 - c. The worst schools
 - d. The Best School in Bangladesh
6. The underlined pronoun "They" refers to
 - a. problems
 - b. people
 - c. children
 - d. doors
7. How many laptops connected to the internet are there on a boat school?
 - a. 1
 - b. 10
 - c. 100
 - d. 1000

2 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

- ✪ Write an essay about an invention that you use every day and why it's important to you.

Brief tips إرشادات موجزة

عند كتابة مقال عن «اختراع مهم تستخدمه بشكل يومي وسبب أهميته لك»، يمكنك الاستعانة بالإرشادات التالية :

1. Title : العنوان

Give your essay an interesting title which makes people want to read it.

اكتب عنوانًا شيقًا يجذب الناس لقراءته.

2. Introduction : المقدمة

Start with a question (which you answer in paragraph two).

Use semi-formal language.

ابدا المقدمة بسؤال تُجيب عليه في الفقرة الرئيسية للموضوع.

3. Main Body : الموضوع الرئيسي

Explain what the invention is and how long you have had it. Say how you use it and why it is so important for you.

وضح ماذا يكون هذا الاختراع ومنذ متى وأنت تستخدمه وكيف تستخدمه ولماذا هو مهم بالنسبة إليك.

4. Conclusion : الخاتمة

Explain who might find this invention useful and why you recommend it.

اذكر من قد يجد هذا الاختراع مفيدًا ولماذا توصي به.

The tablet and the enjoyment of learning

Have you ever thought that learning will be enjoyable one day? I think that most older generations never thought of this idea. To them, learning was a large book, heaps of paper and long hours of study and suffering. However, modern technology has made learning a real fun. How has this happened? Digital devices: Smart phones and tablets have remarkable impact on teaching and learning process. Tablets provide students with great educational material and resources: documentaries, videos, films and more. Using tablets in schools has made a tremendous leap in our education system for both students and teachers. Students can download images, 3D pictures and videos about different topics in all subjects.

Using visual and audio effects makes learning not only easier but also more effective and fun as well. There are huge resources which students can choose from and share with their classmates. The role of the teacher has changed to be a facilitator and a guide to students. Teachers don't focus on introducing information to students but on how to help students develop their skills and through doing activities. A student can't do without his tablet which has his textbooks, notes and even tests. It connects students with the teachers, classmates and the whole world.

3 الترجمة Translation

1. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. In fact, we are much luckier than our ancestors because we enjoy lots of things which have made our life easier and more comfortable.

a. في الواقع، نحن أكثر حظاً بكثير من أجدادنا لأننا نتمتع بالكثير من الأشياء التي جعلت حياتنا أسهل وأكثر راحة.

b. في الواقع، نحن أكثر من محظوظين عن أجدادنا لأننا نتمتع بالكثير من الأشياء التي جعلت حياتنا أسهل وأكثر راحة.

c. في الواقع، نحن أكثر حظاً بكثير من أجدادنا لأننا نتمتع بالكثير من الأشياء التي جعلت حياتهم أسهل وأكثر راحة.

d. في الواقع، نحن أكثر حظاً بكثير من أجدادنا لأنهم يفتقدون الكثير من الأشياء التي جعلت حياتنا أسهل وأكثر راحة.

2. Technology experts are predicting that the computer games of the future will be a lot more demanding both for game producers and for players.

(ملوي - دمج ٢٠٢٣)

- a. يتنبأ خبراء التكنولوجيا بأن ألعاب الكمبيوتر ستستحوذ على المزيد من الاهتمام في المستقبل من كل من المنتجين واللعبين.
- b. يتنبأ خبراء التكنولوجيا بأن الألعاب الرياضية ستستحوذ على المزيد من الاهتمام في المستقبل من كل من المنتجين واللعبين.
- c. يعتقد خبراء التكنولوجيا بأن ألعاب الكمبيوتر لن تستحوذ على المزيد من الاهتمام في المستقبل من كل من المنتجين ولا اللعبين.
- d. يتنبأ خبراء الكمبيوتر بأن ألعاب التكنولوجيا ستستحوذ على المزيد من الاهتمام في المستقبل من كل من المنتجين واللعبين.

● 2. Choose the correct English translation from a , b , c or d :

١. تلعب التكنولوجيا الحديثة دوراً فعالاً في حياتنا، مع العلم أنها كما تُسهم في تقدم المجتمعات فمن الممكن أن تدمرها. (المحدودة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. Modern technology plays an effective role in our life, but we should know that as it contributes to the societies' progress, it can destroy them.
- b. Modern technology is playing effective roles in our past life, but we had to know that as it neglects the progress to the continents, it can support them.
- c. Modern technology played an effect role in our previous life, but we should be known that as it contributed the progress to the societies, it could destroy them.
- d. Modern technology has an effectively rule in our former life, but we must have known that as it prevents the progress to the societies, it can have ruined them.

٢. يجب أن نتعامل مع التكنولوجيا الحديثة بحكمة حتى نستفيد من منافعها ونتجنب أضرارها. (بيلا ٢٠٢٣)

- a. We should deal with modern technology unwisely to make use of its benefits and avoid its harms.
- b. We should deal with modern technology wisely to make use of its harms and avoid its benefits.
- c. We should deal with modern technology wisely to make use of its benefits and avoid its harms.
- d. We should play with modern technology wisely to make use of its benefits and avoid its harms.

app = application

تُستخدَم كلمة (app) كاختصار لكلمة (application) فقط عندما تعني (تطبيق أو برنامج إلكتروني):

- **app = application (n)** تطبيق إلكتروني (على الكمبيوتر أو الهواتف الذكية)
- Modern mobiles have a lot of apps (= applications).
- **application (n)** طلب التحاق (بوظيفة أو عضوية ...)
- The company received hundreds of applications for the job. (**Not: apps**)
- **application (n)** تطبيق عملي (تنفيذ لفكرة)
- The application of this plan needs enough time. (**Not: app**)
- **apply (for / to)(v)** يتقدم بطلب
- I want to apply for this job.
- **apply (v)** يُطبّق فكرة أو خطة - يُنفذ
- It is not easy to apply this idea because it costs too much money.
- **apply (to)(v)** ينطبق على
- School rules apply to all students.

chat

- **chat (with / to / about) (v)** يتسامر (يتحدث مع شخص بشكل ودي)
- Rokaya has been chatting with her friends for two hours.
- The two men chatted about their childhood memories ذكريات الطفولة.
- **chat (with / to / about) (v)** يدرّش (يتحدث مع شخص عبر الإنترنت)
- You waste too much time chatting with your friends online.
- **chat (with / to / about) (n)** دردشة - حديث ودي
- Ayman had a short chat with Ashraf.

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| - have a chat يدرّش | - call in for a chat يتصل للدردشة |
| - a little / a brief chat دردشة لفترة قصيرة | - an online chat دردشة على الإنترنت |

click

- **click (on) (v)** يقر - يُخِذ صوت طقطة
- If you click twice on a file or a folder, it opens.
- **click (n)** لقرة (على الماوس أو أي إرن)
- You can open a file or folder with a double click.

• **click (n)**

صوت طقطقة

- When I heard the click of the lock القفل, I knew that the door was locked.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- at the click of a mouse بسرعة جداً / في غمضة عين
- shut / close with a click يُحدث صوت تكة عند القفل

navigate• **navigate (v)**

يحدد الطريق أو خط السبر

- In the past, the stars helped travellers to navigate.

• **navigate (v)**

يفهم

- This guide دليل will help you to navigate the subject.

• **navigate (v)**

يُبحر

- The waves were high and it was difficult to navigate.

• **navigation (n)**

الملاحة / السفر بحراً

- Navigation needs a lot of experience and patience الصبر.

• **sat-nav = satellite navigation (n)**

جهاز التجوال بالقمر الصناعي

- This car has satellite navigation.

• **navigator (n)**

ضابط الملاحة (ملاح - ربان - بحار)

- He is a clever navigator who never gets lost.

link• **link ... to / with (v)**

يربط ... بـ

- Love and respect link me to / with my friends.
- This road links Aswan to Luxor.

• **link ... together (v)**

يربط ... معاً

- Love and respect links my friends and me together.

• **link / linkage (between ... and...) (n)**

رابط / علاقة بين ... و ...

- Love and respect are the link / linkage between my friends and me.

• **link (n)**

رابط (لصفحة أو موقع علي الانترنت)

- He sent me the link of his website.

technology• **technology (n)**

التكنولوجيا (الآلات والمعدات و الأساليب التي تعتمد علي التطور العلمي والحاسوبي)

- Modern technology has made life easy.

- لاحظ أن كلمة (technology) لا تُعدّ، لكن يمكن استخدام (a piece of / pieces of) قبلها كلفظ تجزئة:

- The smart phone is a piece of technology.
- The smart phone and the GPS are pieces of technology.

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية :

- information technology (IT) تكنولوجيا المعلومات
- advanced technology التكنولوجيا المتطورة
- digital technology التكنولوجيا الرقمية
- advances / developments in technology التطور التكنولوجي

• **technologist (n)**

أخصائي / خبير تكنولوجيا

In our school, Mr Mohammed Omar is a real technologist.

• **technological (adj)**

تكنولوجي - متعلق بالتكنولوجيا

Life has become faster thanks to technological development.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

• **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. The front door locks with a low
a. progress b. invention c. app d. click
2. I use my YouTube channel as a/an for my ideas in life and work.
a. robot b. online c. vehicle d. tip
3. The police are still the suspects المتهمين.
a. recommending b. admitting c. chatting d. quizzing
4. He this story. It has nothing to do with what really happened.
a. invented b. noticed c. navigated d. shared
5. The offer only to new members.
a. blogs b. develops c. applies d. shares

Advanced Exercise on Language

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

• **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. I'd go if it were early, but it very late indeed.
a. had been b. was c. isn't d. is
2. I'd help if I
a. had asked b. were asked c. am asked d. asked
3. They will build a new villa if
a. needs b. is needed c. need d. needed
4. Were he hard, he would succeed in the exam.
a. study b. studied c. to study d. studying
5. Don't bother to ring me it's important.
a. if b. unless c. but for d. in case

Test on Unit 8

• Understand • Apply • Create

تدوينه

التقييمات
الشهرية في
نهاية الكتاب



اختبار الكتروني

1. Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. "To your benefit, you have to take this medicine." The antonyms of "benefit" here are and (برج العرب ٢٠٢٣)

- a. profit b. harm c. advantage
d. contact e. damage

2. "The voice on the phone was familiar." The synonyms of "familiar" are (شرق الزقازيق ٢٠٢٣)

- a. known b. strange c. unknown
d. clear e. strong

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. GPS stands for Global System. (الزيتون ٢٠٢٣)

- a. Positioning b. Positioned c. Positional d. Positions

2. Is it a vehicle or is it powered by petrol only? (البحيرة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. high-tech b. hybrid c. electric d. petrol

3. The robot is one of the most important (النوبارية ٢٠٢٣)

- a. discoveries b. explorations c. inventions d. exporters

4. Some migrating birds can by the moon. (مغاغة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. control b. notice c. navigate d. relax

5. Can you this letter for me on your way home ?

- a. network b. attach c. spend d. post

6. My form was sent by email to the company.

- a. comment b. communication c. application d. development

7. Teachers specific examples to make their points clear.

- a. offer b. give c. do d. cause

8. If I enough money, I'd have bought this nice T-shirt. (الدلتجات ٢٠٢٣)

- a. had b. had been c. have had d. had had

9. Metal expands if it (الدلتجات ٢٠٢٣)

- a. heat b. heated c. is heated d. heating

10. If we found our company, we it on our own. (رشيد ٢٠٢٣)

- a. would run b. will run
c. would have run d. ran

11. If I free time, I would rather watch a foreign film. (النوبارية ٢٠٢٣)

- a. had b. have c. had had d. will have

12. If water freezes, it into ice. (الرحمانية ٢٠٢٣)

- a. will turn b. turns c. would turn d. turned

13. You will miss the lecture you come on time. (ادكو ٢٠٢٣)
 a. if b. unless c. because d. in case
14. If he hard, he will get high marks. (التبين ٢٠٢٣)
 a. studied b. was studying c. studies d. had studied

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (الدفو ٢٠٢٣)

A robot is a **special** programmable machine that can move and carry out a complex series of actions automatically. It follows instructions that come from a computer installed inside it. The robot does not make mistakes. It doesn't get tired or complain.

Robots are all around us. Some robots can help make cars. Other robots can help explore volcanoes. Certain robots can help vacuum your house. Some robots can recognize words. They can be used to help answer the phone calls. Some robots look like humans but most robots do not. Most robots just look like machines.

Long ago, people imagined robots. Over 2,000 years ago, a famous poet imagined robots. The poet's name was Homer. His robots were made of gold. They cleaned and made things. But they were not real. They were imaginary. The first real robot was made in America in 1961 by the American inventor George Devol. It looked like a giant arm and was used in car making factories.

In the future, we will have even more robots. They will do things that we can't do or things that are dangerous for us to do. Robots will help us fight fires. They will be used in wars. They will help us fight sickness. They will help us explore planets in the space. I think robots will replace man in different fields.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

- The robot doesn't get tired or complain because it
 a. doesn't make mistakes b. is a machine
 c. can't speak d. follows instructions
- According to the passage, the antonym of "**special**" is
 a. perfect b. tired c. expensive d. normal
- The main purpose of the second paragraph is to
 a. show how easy to make a robot b. tell what a robot is
 c. describe things a robot can do d. tell us about the first robot
- The robot receives the instructions from
 a. man b. a poet c. another robot d. a computer
- Robots have been in man's thoughts for over years.
 a. 60 b. 62 c. 1961 d. 2,000
- The author of this passage feels that Robots are
 a. helpful b. imaginary c. harmless d. dangerous

7. Which of these gives the best use of robot in the future? It will be used to help

- a. make sandwiches b. explore Mars
c. read books d. spread diseases

4. a. **Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:**

The first industrial robot was introduced to the US in the 1960s. Since then, their technology has improved rapidly creating many advantages of robots.

(فارسكور ٢٠٢٣)

- a. لقد تم تقديم أول روبوت صناعي إلى المملكة المتحدة في الستينات، ومنذ ذلك تحسنت تقنياته بسرعة مما أوجد العديد من المزايا للروبوتات.
b. لقد تم تقديم أول روبوت صناعي إلى الولايات المتحدة في الستينات، ومنذ ذلك الحين تحسنت تقنياته بسرعة مما أوجد العديد من المزايا للروبوتات.
c. لقد تم تصنيع أول روبوت صناعي في الولايات المتحدة في الستينات، ومنذ ذلك الحين تحسنت تقنياته بسرعة مما أوجد العديد من المزايا للإنسان.
d. لقد تم تقديم أول روبوت صناعي إلى الولايات المتحدة في الستينات، وبذلك تحسنت تقنياته بسرعة مما أوجد العديد من المزايا للروبوتات.

b. **Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:**

خلال السنوات القليلة القادمة سوف تعتمد الكثير من الوظائف والأعمال على الإنسان الآلي أكثر من العمال.

(ملوي - دمج ٢٠٢٣)

- a. Through the next few years, a lot of jobs will depend on workers more than robots.
b. Through the last few years, a lot of jobs depended on robots more than workers.
c. Through the next few years, a lot of jobs will depend on robots more than workers.
d. Through the next few years, some jobs will depend on both robots and workers.

5. **Answer the following questions:**

1. Do you think Captain Smollet is a good Captian ? Why/Why not ?

.....

2. Jim proved to be brave. Show how.

.....

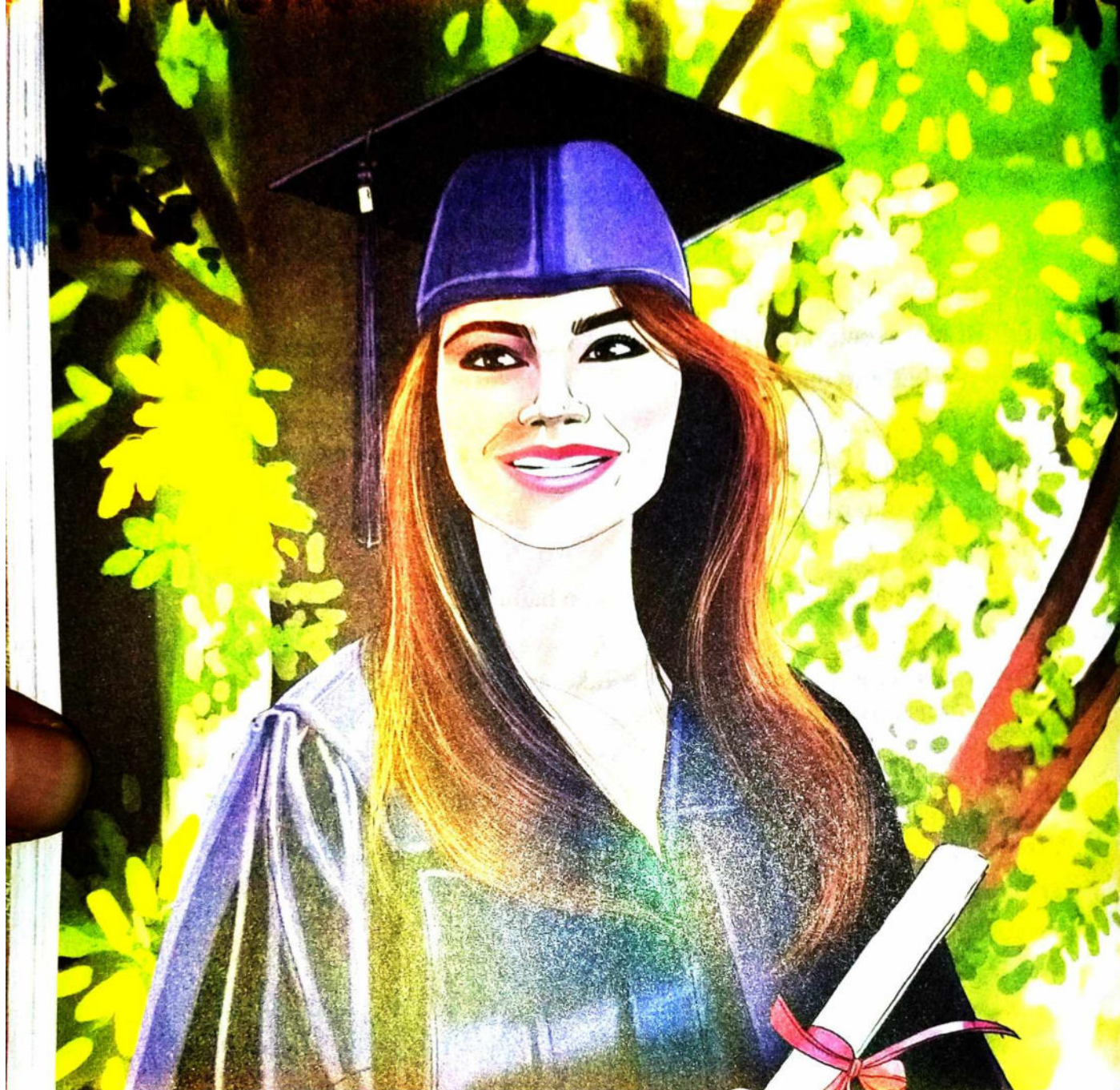
3. Why do you think Dr Livesey wanted to find Ben Gun ?

.....

6. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:**

“The internet”

.....
.....
.....



UNIT

9

A good education

Objectives: To understand the importance of education.

Objectives الأهداف الرئيسية

1. To understand the importance of education.
2. To know the different levels of education.
3. To know the different types of education.
4. To know the different methods of education.

1. To understand the importance of education.
2. To know the different levels of education.
3. To know the different types of education.
4. To know the different methods of education.



PART 1

VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

boarding school(n)	مدرسة داخلية	housekeeper(n)	مديرة منزل
bully(ied) (n - v)	متنمر - بلطجي - يتنمر	orphan(ed) (n - v)	يتيم - يصبح يتيم
bullying(n)	البلطجة - التنمر	school(ed) (v)	يُدرَّب - يُعلَّم
cruel(adj)	قاسي	schooling(n)	التعليم المدرسي
education(n)	التعليم	servant(n)	خادم
governess(n)	مُدرِّسة مُقيمة		

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

advertise(d) (v)	يُعلن عن	headmaster(n)	الناظر
allow(ed) (v)	يسمح - يُمكن	honesty(n)	الأمانة
apply(ied) (v)	يتقدم بطلب التحاق	huge(adj)	ضخم - واسع
author(n)	مؤلف	importance(n)	أهمية
believe(d) (v)	يعتقد - يؤمن	improve(d) (v)	يُحسن - يتحسن
care(d) (v - n)	يهتم / يربي / رعاية	kindness(n)	العطف - الطيبة
comfortable(adj)	مريح	level(n)	مُسْتَوِي
continue(d) (v)	يستمر	miss(ed) (v)	يفتقد - يفوته
earn(ed) (v)	يكسب مال	owner(n)	مالك / صاحب
employ(ed) (v)	يوظف - يُشغّل	previous(adj)	السابق
energy(n)	طاقة	quite(adv)	إلى حد ما
fight - fought(v)	يتشاجر مع - يقاتل	relation(n)	أحد الأقارب - علاقة
forget - forgot -	ينسي	school term(n)	فصل دراسي
forgotten (v)		secret (n - adj)	سِرّ - سِرّي
friendly(adj)	ودود	strange (adj)	غريب
gardener(n)	بستاني	unkind(adj)	قاسي
hate(d) (v)	يكره	upset - upset (v - adj)	يُزعج / يضايق - منزعج
head teacher(n)	مدير المدرسة	wealthy (adj)	ثري - غني جداً

3 Definitions تعريفات

Memorise	Understand
boarding school(n) مدرسة داخلية	a place where children live and study

bullying(n)	البلطجة	the use of strength القوة or power to frighten يُخيف or hurt someone who is weaker اضعف
cruel(adj)	قاسي	unkind and hurting others
education(n)	التعليم	the process عملية of teaching التدريس and learning التعلُّم, usually at school, college / مدرسة عليا, or university
governess(n)	مُدرِّسة مُقيمة / مُزينة	a woman who teaches children in their home
housekeeper(n)	مديرة منزل	a servant who looks after the whole house
orphan(n)	يتيم	a child whose parents are dead
schooling(n)	التعليم المدرسي	education at schools
servant(n)	خادم	a person who works for people in their house

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- When she was nine, she was sent to a/an school where she lived and studied. (منوف ٢٠٢٣)
a. board b. boarding c. abroad d. holding
- A/An is not a good member of a society. (زفني ٢٠٢٣)
a. bully b. governess c. orphan d. author
- Having lessons at home was known as Children didn't go to school but learnt at home. (كوم حماده ٢٠٢٣)
a. free education b. boarding school
c. school education d. homeschooling
- must be fought by all members of society as it affects us all. (الرحمانية ٢٠٢٣)
a. Cooperating b. Imagination c. Thinking d. Bullying
- The poor girl's parents died when she was a little baby. She is a/an (حلوان ٢٠٢٣)
a. teacher b. orphan c. governess d. widow
- Rich families used to bring a to teach their sons and daughters at home. (شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)
a. governess b. nurse c. servant d. gardener
- A governess is a woman who children in their home. (اطسا ٢٠٢٣)
a. teaches b. punishes c. learns d. studies

8. Rich people usually pay to help with the housework. (٢٠٢٣ پانچ)
- a. governesses b. servants c. housewives d. relatives
9. As a/an, she is responsible for looking after the whole house.
- a. governess b. housekeeper c. author d. orphan
10. It is important that parents and teachers be not to children.
- a. boarding b. serious c. cruel d. nearby
11. The development of is necessary for a better future.
- a. level b. confidence c. education d. success
12. My friend spent a long time to a hunting dog. (٢٠٢٣ چار)
- a. chase b. school c. succeed d. varies

2 Important Vocabulary

13. He was one of the people who to change the law of old rents. (٢٠٢٣ ساڻهه)
- a. achieved b. campaigned c. improved d. inspired
14. Why did you tell Amal about my illness? You just can't keep a, can you? (الزيتون ٢٠٢٣)
- a. puzzle b. mystery c. secrete d. secret
15. Really, I my family. I look forward to going back home.
- a. fail b. apply c. miss d. employ
16. '.....' and 'relative' have one meaning in common. They both can mean a member of one's family.
- a. Relationship b. Relation c. Relativity d. Relating
17. The manager wants to another secretary.
- a. fail b. apply c. miss d. employ
18. I don't like your remarks about your friend. You have really annoyed him.
- a. kind b. unkind c. possible d. impossible
19. My elder brother about me very much.
- a. saves b. prefers c. cares d. earns
20. I think is one of the best qualities of a good friend.
- a. honesty b. wealthy c. equipment d. research
21. Never anybody to affect your opinion negatively.
- a. advertise b. apply c. bully d. allow
22. Don't bullies. They have nothing to lose.
- a. earn b. fight c. control d. apply
23. I miss my school very much. I learnt and had much fun there.
- a. necessary b. glad c. previous d. wealthy
24. She felt very when she knew that her application was rejected.
- a. upset b. friendly c. secret d. wealthy

25. This villa belongs to a/an businessman who has another two ones.
a. wealth b. wealthy c. impossible d. impossibility
26. No one can deny the of education in everyone's life.
a. copy b. conclusion c. garden d. importance
27. It is your that makes the kids love you.
a. cruelty b. bully c. kindness d. conclusion
28. People who enough money do not need to borrow.
a. lose b. earn c. miss d. prefer
29. Sports channels earn a lot of money from producers who their products.
a. advertise b. apply c. bully d. allow
30. I think you should for this job.
a. fail b. apply c. miss d. employ
31. It is the job of a/an to look after plants and trees.
a. author b. stranger c. gardener d. owner

3 Definitions

32. A is a woman who teaches students in their home. (إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣)
a. governor b. governess c. goddess d. guide
33. A is a person who works for people in their house.
a. servant b. service c. server d. survey
34. To be means to be unkind and hurting others.
a. educated b. cruel c. kind d. successful
35. A/An is a child whose parents are dead.
a. homeless b. servant c. orphan d. housekeeper
36. A is a servant who looks after the whole house.
a. housekeeper b. worker c. master d. cook

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

become	friends with	يُصبح صديقاً لـ	lose	a job	يفقد وظيفته
break	his back	ينكسر ظهره		touch with	يفقد التواصل مع
do	a course	يلتحق بدورة تدريبية		a match	يخسر مباراة
fail	a test	يُفشل في امتحان	make	... happy	يجعل ... سعيداً
keep	... warm	... يحافظ على دفء		friends	يصادق
	... under control	يُنقّي ... تحت السيطرة	start	a fire	يتسبب في حريق

2 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
cruel	قاسي	unkind, savage, wicked
previous	سابق	former, earlier
servant	خادم	attendant, footman
servant	خادمة	attendant, maid
wealthy	ثري	very rich

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
cruel	قاسي	friendly, gentle, merciful, kind	حنون - رحيم
previous	سابق	later, following	لاحق - تالي
servant	خادم - خادمة	master, mistress	سيد - سيدة
wealthy	ثري	destitute, poor	مُعْدَم - فقير

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

bully			
bully(v)	يتنمر	- Never bully others.	
bully(n)	بلطجي / مُتنمّر	- Never be a bully.	
bullying(n)	البلطجة	- Bullying is a crime.	
cruel			
cruelty(n)	القسوة	- She doesn't like you because of your cruelty.	
cruel(adj)	قاسي	- She doesn't like you because you are cruel to her.	
cruelly(adv)	بقسوة	- She doesn't like you because you treat her cruelly.	
education			
educate(v)	يُعلّم - يُربي	- Sama's parents educated her well.	
education(n)	التعليم - التربية	- Sama had a good education.	
educator(n)	مُعلّم	- My father is a good educator.	
educated(adj)	مُتعلّم	- Sama is a well-educated girl.	
orphan			
orphan(v)	يُتّم / يصبح يتيمًا	- A lot of children were orphaned during the war.	
orphan(n)	شخص يتيم	- The war left a lot of children as orphans.	
orphanage(n)	ملجأ أيتام	- He was put in an orphanage.	

school		
school(v)	يُدْرَس - يدرّب	- My grandfather was schooled for a few years.
school(n)	مدرسة - الدراسة	- My grandfather went to school for a few years.
schooling(n)	التعليم المدرسي	- My grandfather had a few years of schooling.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

(be) right for	مناسب لـ	In fact,	في الحقيقة
cruel to	قاسي علي	instead of	بدلاً من
different from / to	مختلف عن	keep in touch with	يُبقى على اتصال بـ
eight-year-old girl	فتاة تبلغ من العمر ثمان سنوات	lose touch with	تنقطع علاقته بـ
have lessons at home	يأخذ دروسه في البيت	online learning	التعلّم على الإنترنت
I am glad to say	يسعدني أن أقول	see you soon	أراك قريباً

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

advertise for	يُعلن عن حاجته لـ	move to	ينتقل إلي
allow ... to	يسمح لـ ... بـ	refer to	يشير إلي - ينوّه عن
apply for	يتقدم بطلب لـ	return to	يعود إلي
chat with	يُدرّش مع	save ... from	ينقذ ... من
come round	يُزور	send ... away	يُبعد ... - يُطرّد
continue with	يستمر في القيام بـ	speak to	يتحدّث إلي / مع
decide to	يقرر أن	work for	يعمل لدي
fight with	يتقاتل / يتشاجر مع	work with	يعمل مع
live with	يسكن مع		

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

orphan / orphanage

- **orphan (n)** يتيم (طفل فقد والديه)
- We must help orphans because they do not have parents to look after them.
- **orphan (v)** يُتيم
- Many children were orphaned during the war.
- **orphanage (n)** ملجأ أيتام
- Oliver spent his childhood in an orphanage.

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

- **MRQ : Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :**

1. The word "cruel" is the word "kind". (غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)
 a. antonymous with b. synonymous with
 c. similar to d. the same as e. the opposite of
2. She friends with all the girls in her class. (الإسكندرية - الجمر ٢٠٢٣)
 a. became b. did c. had
 d. lost e. made
3. "Her husband comes from a wealthy family". The antonyms of the word "wealthy" are and (ادفو ٢٠٢٣)
 a. giant b. rich c. genuine
 d. destitute e. poor
4. You can avoid losing a by improving your skills.
 a. course b. work c. match
 d. research e. job
5. Try to keep
 a. warm b. a test c. work
 d. everything under control e. sad
6. "Children do not like a person who is cruel to them." The adjective 'cruel' in this sentence is an antonym of
 a. brutal b. friendly c. savage
 d. merciful e. unkind
7. The words and are synonymous with 'servant'.
 a. master b. mistress c. owner
 d. attendant e. maid
8. A boarding school is a place where children and
 a. are born b. die c. get dressed
 d. live e. study

- **MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. It's easy to in touch with your friends. (جھینہ ٢٠٢٣)
 a. serve b. save c. safe d. keep
2. When one moves to a new city, it's not easy to new friends. (غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)
 a. make b. gain c. earn d. do
3. A cigarette end the fire.
 a. lost b. started c. became d. broke
4. A clever student never a test.
 a. builds b. messes c. loses d. fails

5. includes learning different subjects in addition to doing activities.
 a. A school b. Schools c. Schooled d. Schooling
6. My son started last September.
 a. school b. schools c. schooled d. schooling
7. He has the horse and you can now ride it safely.
 a. school b. schools c. schooled d. schooling
8. I promise to later to make sure everything is OK.
 a. visit b. come round c. get to d. a & b
9. The lifeguard saved the child drowning.
 a. as b. in c. to d. from
10. I want to take the school football competition.
 a. part b. part in c. place d. place in
11. All my friends went my opinion.
 a. along with b. a long with c. on d. up
12. Being busy makes people touch with old friends.
 a. be in b. mess c. lose d. keep
13. War has a lot of children.
 a. orphan b. orphans c. orphanage d. orphaned

PART III

READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

Lesson 1 SB page 26

Jane Eyre

Charlotte Brontë was born in England in 1816. She and her two sisters all became famous **authors**⁽¹⁾. Charlotte Brontë's most famous book is *Jane Eyre*. It was written in 1847.

Jane Eyre was an **orphan**⁽²⁾ who lived with her cousins and her **wealthy**⁽³⁾ aunt, Mrs Reed. The family was **unkind**⁽⁴⁾ and they did not want Jane to live with them.

Jane was sent **away**⁽⁵⁾ to school. Jane was happy to go to Lowood School, but the **owner**⁽⁶⁾, Mr Brocklehurst, was very **cruel**⁽⁷⁾, so the students lived unhappy lives.



(1) مؤلفين

(2) يتيم

(3) ثري - غني جداً

(4) قاسي

(5) بعيداً

(6) مالك / صاحب

(7) قاسي

The old man said he had lost his copy of the book many years ago, before I was born, so he didn't mind **waiting a little longer** ⁽⁷⁾.

(7) ينتظر لفترة أطول قليلاً

He let me buy it and when I got home, I knew I had been very lucky.

PART IV LANGUAGE

Past simple and past perfect (active & passive)

1 The Past Simple Tense : زمن الماضي البسيط :

١ يتكون الماضي البسيط في الجمل الخبرية المبنية للمعلوم من :

Subject الفاعل + التصريف الثاني للفعل

ex. - Ahmed visited his friends yesterday. - They saw a show last night.

٢ عند النفي :

Subject الفاعل + didn't + inf.

ex. - They didn't watch the match yesterday.
- Omar didn't do his homework.

٣ عند الاستفهام بـ «هل» :

Did + subject الفاعل + inf.?

ex. - Did you tidy your room ? - Yes, I did.
- Did Ali do his homework ? - No, he didn't.

٤ عند الاستفهام بـ «كلمة استفهام» :

Question word أداة استفهام + did/didn't + subject + inf.?

ex. - Where did you watch the match ? - Why didn't you stay at a hotel ?

٥ يتحول زمن الماضي البسيط لصيغة المبني للمجهول باستخدام الصيغة التالية :

Object مفعول + was/were + p.p.

ex. - They watched a film last night. (معلوم)
- A film was watched last night (by them). (مجهول)

٦ كلمات وتعبيرات زمنية تستخدم في الجمل لتشير إلى الماضي :

yesterday أمس - last ... الماضي - ago منذ - once مرة واحدة -
once upon a time في الماضي - the other day ذات يوم مضى - in the past في الماضي -
in ancient times قديماً - previously فيما سبق - in 2011 ... etc.

ex. - I met some old friends in the club the other day.
- Mr Mohammed moved to his new house two weeks ago.

لاحظ استخدام ظروف التكرار التالية في زمن الماضي :

always – usually – sometimes – often – never ... etc.

ex. - Sama always got up early when she was a student.

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

١ إذا كان الفعل الأساسي (was / were) لا نستخدم (did / didn't) في النفي والسؤال.

- He was at school yesterday. (إثبات)
- He wasn't at school yesterday. (نفي)
- Was he at school yesterday? (سؤال بـ 'هل')
- Where was he yesterday? (سؤال بـ أداة استفهام)

٢ إذا كان الفعل الأساسي (had) نستخدم معه (did) كفعل مساعد في النفي أو السؤال:

- She had lunch at two o'clock. (إثبات)
- She didn't have lunch at two o'clock. (نفي)
- Did she have lunch at two o'clock? (سؤال بـ 'هل')
- When did she have lunch? (سؤال بـ أداة استفهام)

Uses استخدامات

١ التعبير عن حدث بدأ وانتهى في الماضي :

- ex. - I visited my grandmother last Friday.
- My father built this house ten years ago.

٢ سرد مواقف أو قصص وقعت في الماضي :

- ex. - My team played well yesterday. The players were in top form.
- They entertained the fans. My team scored four goals.

٣ بعد (if) في الحالة الشرطية الثانية :

- ex. - If I studied hard, I'd pass this exam.

Past Habits :

عادات الماضي :

١ يمكن استخدام الصيغ التالية للتعبير عن عادات الماضي التي لم تعد موجودة في الحاضر :

1. Subj. + used to + inf.

- ex. - He used to swim in the sea.

2. It was + someone's + habit + to + inf.

- ex. - It was his habit to swim in the sea.

٢ يمكن استخدام (was / were + used to + n. / inf. + ing) للتعبير عن أن شيء ما كان معتادًا بالنسبة للفاعل :

- ex. - They were used to working in the sun.
- I was used to eating salty food.

٣ يمكن استخدام (got / became / grew + used to + n. / inf. + ing) للتعبير عن التعود

- ex. - I got used to the freezing weather in Canada.
- I became used to working on a farm.

2 The Past Perfect simple : زمن الماضي التام البسيط :

١ يتكون زمن الماضي التام البسيط من :

Subject فاعل + had + p.p.

- ex. I had studied English before I travelled to New York.

٢ عند النفي :

Subject فاعل + hadn't + p.p.

- ex. They hadn't watched the match before they went shopping.

٣ عند الاستفهام بـ «هل» :

Had + subject فاعل + p.p.?

- ex. Had Soha tidied her room before she went to school ?
- Yes, she had. - No, she hadn't.

٤ عند الاستفهام بـ «كلمة استفهام» :

Question word أداة استفهام + had + subject + p.p.?

- ex. What had happened before you phoned the police ?

٥ عند تحويل زمن الماضي التام لصيغة المبني المجهول نستخدم :

Object نائب الفاعل + had been + p.p.

- ex. English had been studied before I travelled to New York.

Uses استخدامات

١ حدث تم قبل حدث آخر في الماضي (لتوضيح أيهما حدث أولاً) :

- ex. When I had sent the email, I turned off the computer.

٢ حدث تم قبل وقت محدد في الماضي وفي هذه الحالة نستخدم تعبيرات مثل :

تعبير زمني دال على الماضي + (في مثل هذا الوقت / قبل / by / before / بحلول)

- ex. By midnight, my children had gone to bed.

٣ يمكن استخدام (since / for / just / already) مع الماضي التام وذلك في سياق التعبير عن أحداث ماضية :

- ex. We had lived there since I was born. (We left our old flat last year.)

٤ يمكن استخدام الماضي التام مع روابط السبب و النتيجة والتناقض للتعبير عن الحدث الأول :

- ex. He looked very tired because he had worked hard for a week.

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

1 **After / As soon as** بمجرد أن / **When** عندما / **The moment** في اللحظة التي
جملة ماضى بسيط + جملة ماضى تام + **Once**

- After she had arrived home, she phoned me.

2 **After / On + noun / (inf. + ing)** + جملة ماضى بسيط

- After/ On arriving home, she phoned me.

3 **Having + p.p. + ...** + جملة ماضى بسيط

- Having arrived home, she phoned me.

4 **Before / By the time / When** + جملة ماضى بسيط + جملة ماضى تام

- Before she phoned me, she had arrived home.

5 **Before + noun / (inf. + ing)** + جملة ماضى تام

- Before phoning me, she had arrived home.

6 جملة ماضى تام + **until / till** حتى + جملة ماضى بسيط غالباً ما تكون منفية

- She didn't phone me until she had arrived home.

Remember

1 الماضى البسيط يمكن أن يحل محل الماضى التام مع بعض الروابط السابقة و إن كان استخدام الماضى التام مع الحدث الأول أكثر دقة:

- I had met Omar last Monday before he travelled to London. (✓)
- I met Omar last Monday before he travelled to London. (✓)

2 لاحظ أن :

• After = Before that

- After I had done the shopping, I went home.
- = I went home. Before that, I had done the shopping.

• Before = After that

- Before I went home, I had done the shopping.
- = I had done the shopping. After that, I went home.

ملاحظات للبالغين Notes for Advanced level

١ لاحظ استخدام الماضي التام مع الظروف التالية بمعنى (لم يكـدحتى) :

- Subj. + had + no sooner + p.p.+ than + جملة ماضى بسيط
= Subj. + had + hardly / scarcely + p.p. + when + جملة ماضى بسيط

- She had no sooner arrived home than she phoned me.
- She had hardly arrived home when she phoned me.

تتقدم (had) على الفاعل عندما تبدأ الجملة بـ (No sooner, Hardly, Scarcely) :

- No sooner + had + subj. + p.p.+ than + جملة ماضى بسيط
= Hardly / Scarcely + had + subj. + p.p. + when + جملة ماضى بسيط

- No sooner had she arrived home than she phoned me.
- Hardly had she arrived home when she phoned me.

٢ الجملة التي تبدأ بـ (not until / not since / only after / only when / only by) :

يتقدم الفعل المساعد على الفاعل فى الجملة الرئيسية:

- She didn't phone me until she had arrived home.
- Not until she had arrived home did she phone me.

٣ لاحظ :

It was only when } ماضى بسيط + that + ماضى تام
It wasn't until }

- It was only when I had finished my work that you called me.
- It wasn't until I had finished my work that you called me.

٤ لاحظ استخدام الصيغ التالية :

- جملة رئيسية + جملة ثانوية + after / before / when / while / because
- جملة ثانوية + جملة رئيسية + (inf. + ing)
- (مبني للمعلوم) Having + p.p. + ...
- (مبني للمجهول) Having + been + p.p. + ...
- After I had repaired my laptop, it worked well. (معلوم)
- Repairing my laptop, it worked well. (معلوم)
- Having repaired my laptop, it worked well. (معلوم)
- Having been repaired, my laptop worked well. (مجهول)

General Exercise On Language

• Apply

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

I Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. The food until my father had come from work. (ادفو ٢٠٢٣)
a. isn't prepared b. didn't prepare
c. wasn't prepared d. isn't prepared
2. Kamal his homework before he went to the cinema. (شرق المنصورة ٢٠٢٣)
a. had finished b. was finished c. was finishing d. would finish
3. I didn't go out with my friends I had finished my homework.
a. until b. unless c. if d. since
(منوف ٢٠٢٣)
4. I about the accident until I had read the papers. (شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)
a. hadn't known b. wasn't known c. didn't know d. don't know
5. He a prize for a drawing of an animal. (التبين ٢٠٢٣)
a. gave b. was given c. has given d. had given
6. He to sit down until he had apologized. (مغاغة ٢٠٢٣)
a. wasn't allowed b. doesn't allow c. hadn't allowed d. didn't allow
7. The car fixed last week. It will be fixed tomorrow. (غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)
a. didn't b. weren't c. wasn't d. hadn't
8. It was only when I Spanish that I travelled to Spain. (الدلتا ٢٠٢٣)
a. learned b. had learned c. have learned d. has learned
9. A new hospital in our village last year. (منطقة أسبوط الأزهرية - أدبي ٢٠٢٣)
a. build b. built c. was building d. was built
10. When I returned home, my mother already prepared lunch.
a. has b. had c. was d. is
(أسوان ٢٠٢٣)
11. After school, he applied for a job in a big company. (المعصرة ٢٠٢٣)
a. had finished b. finish c. finishing d. he finishes
12. Omar left Cairo, he had read a lot of books about England.
a. Before b. Until c. After d. Unless
(المعصرة ٢٠٢٣)
13. After my homework , I watched the film. (الزيتون ٢٠٢٣)
a. has been done b. had done c. has done d. had been done

2 Special cases

14. As soon as my sister came home, she realized that she her keys at the office. (سمنود ٢٠٢٣)
a. was leaving b. had left c. will leave d. is leaving
15. I wish I were in Alexandria now. I would visit its library. But I there now. (غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)
a. am b. am not c. aren't d. weren't
16. I found the wallet which lost last Sunday. (رشيد ٢٠٢٣)
a. had b. was being c. have d. had been
17. I didn't leave the house until my friend me. (ادكو ٢٠٢٣)
a. had telephoned b. was telephoning
c. will telephone d. has telephoned
18. heard her success news, Soha gave a cry of joy. (غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)
a. On b. Had c. Once d. Having
19. cleaning the kitchen floor, she started working in the garden. (المرج ٢٠٢٣)
a. Finished b. Having finished
c. Had finished d. Had to finish
20. No sooner the loud noise than we went there quickly. (الدلتجات ٢٠٢٣)
a. we heard b. we had heard c. had we heard d. we have heard
21. It was only the boy had broken the window that he ran away. (ساقلة ٢٠٢٣)
a. before b. when c. while d. on
22. Having the good news, I hurried to tell my family. (جهينة ٢٠٢٣)
a. received b. receiving c. had received d. have received
23. She no replies until one day, she got a letter. (أسوان ٢٠٢٣)
a. receives b. had received
c. has received d. hadn't received
24. I drank some tea., I had eaten lunch. (أبو المطاير ٢٠٢٣)
a. Before b. After c. Before that d. After that

3 Check your understanding

25. "When I went to the cinema, the film had started." This means I
a. watched all the film b. missed part of the film
c. didn't watch the film d. first arrived, then the film started
(إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣)



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

appreciate(d) (v)	يُقدَّر / يُقَمَّن	so-called(adj)	المزعوم - المدعو
fail(ed) (v)	يفشل	solver(n)	حلّال المشاكل
failure(n)	الفشل	success(n)	النجاح
home-schooled(n)	متعلّم من المنزل		

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

ability(n)	القُدرة	explain(ed) (v)	يشرح / يوضّح
artist(n)	فنان	feeling(n)	شعور
break(n)	استراحة - فاصل	imagination(n)	الخيال
brilliant(adj)	رائع - ذكي	instead(adv)	بدلاً من ذلك
compare(d) (v)	يقارن	keen(adj)	حريص - متحمّس / متلهف
conclusion(n)	استنتاج - خلاصة	knowledge(n)	المعرفة
confidence(n)	الثقة	laugh(ed) (v)	يضحك
copy(ied) (n - v)	نسخة - ينسخ	lose - lost - lost (v)	يفقد - يخسر
critical(adj)	نقدي - حرج	mind(ed) (v)	يمانع - يبالى
description(n)	وُصف	musician(adj)	موسيقيار
discuss(ed) (v)	يناقش	otherwise(adv)	وإلا
electrician(n)	فني كهرباء	practical(adj)	عملي
engine(n)	مُحرّك	practise(d) (v)	يمارس - يتدرب
engineering(n - adj)	الهندسة - هندسي	serious(adj)	جاد - خطير
equipment(n)	مُعدات	suppose(d) (v)	يفترض
especially(adv)	خصوصاً	terrible(adj)	فظيع
experiment(n)	تجربة معملية	thinking(n)	التفكير
expert(n - adj)	خبير		

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. I hope that all my students achieve great at school and later at work.
a. orphan b. governess c. failure d. success

2. Problem are usually people who have social intelligence.
a. servants b. bullies c. solvers d. relatives
3. I am sure that these experts won't find any solutions to the problem.
a. so-called b. serious c. critical d. brilliant
4. I what my parents do to help me succeed.
a. reply b. check c. save d. appreciate
5. "If you bully your schoolmates again, you will be sent out of this school." In this sentence, 'bully' is a/an
a. noun b. verb c. adjective d. adverb
6. You'll surely in everything unless you stop wasting your time.
a. fail b. apply c. miss d. employ
7. Wasting time is one of the main causes of
a. orphan b. governess c. failure d. success
8. students miss making friends with their peers اقرا.
a. So-called b. Home-schooled c. Critical d. Brilliant

2 Important Vocabulary

9. The teacher caught two students the answers out of the book.
a. chatting b. reading c. copying d. replying
(المرح ٢٠٢٣)
10. Some people think that it's cruel to do on animals. (سمود ٢٠٢٣)
a. experience b. experiments c. feelings d. comments
11. The comes at the end of an essay to summarise it. (ادفو ٢٠٢٣)
a. introduction b. body c. conclusion d. draft
12. The told me that the wires were old and needed to be changed.
a. blacksmith b. electrician c. politician d. carpenter
(ادفو ٢٠٢٣)
13. Pollution is a problem that needs quick solutions.
a. boarding b. serious c. secret d. nearby
14. Your in me is something I am very proud of.
a. ability b. imagination c. knowledge d. confidence
15. Applicants who have experience will be employed.
a. practical b. secret c. nearby d. critical
16. I don't lending my tools to others. We should help each other.
a. compare b. suppose c. mind d. copy
17. I have to go now, I'll miss my flight.
a. especially b. otherwise c. opposite d. instead
18. As an expert in farming, he has a lot of about plants.
a. ability b. imagination c. knowledge d. confidence

19. students always want to learn new things.
 a. Friendly b. Keen c. Comfortable d. Critical
20. It is better to prices on different websites before making an order.
 a. compare b. suppose c. mind d. copy
21. I do not drink coffee., I drink tea.
 a. Especially b. Otherwise c. Opposite d. Instead
22. Salah's as a footballer have helped him become a world-famous star.
 a. abilities b. imagination c. knowledge d. confidence
23. I expect this student will come first.
 a. secret b. upset c. brilliant d. critical
24. I she is ill. She looks pale شاحبة.
 a. compare b. suppose c. mind d. copy
25. I like roses, red ones.
 a. especially b. otherwise c. opposite d. instead
26. I won't tell you what I mean. Use your
 a. equipment b. imagination c. engine d. confidence
27. He really needs help. He is in a situation.
 a. practical b. keen c. brilliant d. critical
28. The Great Pyramid is a great project.
 a. lucky b. expert c. engineering d. a & c

PART II

VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations متلزمات لفظية

bring	success	يؤدي إلى النجاح	give	reasons	يقدم مبررات
build	a car engine	يصمم محرك سيارة	give	jobs	يؤمّر وظائف
	sports	يمارس رياضة	keep	going back	يستمر في العودة - يتراجع باستمرار
do	well/better	يؤدي جيداً/ بشكل أفضل		mistakes	يُخطئ
	experiments	يُجري تجارب	make	electricity	يُولّد كهرباء
	things better	يقوم بالأشياء بشكل أفضل		friends	يُصادق
feel	lonely	يشعر بالوحدة	run	open days	يقوم بتنظيم أيام مفتوحة
get	an education	يتعلّم	start	school	يبدأ الدراسة

2 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
expert	inexpert, amateur
fail	succeed in, pass
failure	success, achievement

3 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

appreciate	
appreciate(v) يُقدِّر/يُثَمِّن - يستحسن	- She appreciated what I had done.
appreciation(n) استحسان - إعجاب	- She thanked me out of appreciation.
appreciative(adj) شاكر / مُمتَن - مُعْجَب	- She thanked me in an appreciative way.
appreciatively(adv) باعجاب - بامتنان	- She thanked me appreciatively.
fail	
fail(v) يفشل - يرسب - يتعطل	- I do not like to fail.
failure(n) الفشل - الرسوب	- I do not like failure.

4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a long way from	علي مسافة كبيرة من	from my point of view	من وجهة نظري
a waste of time	مضيعة للوقت	keep trying	يستمر في المحاولة
angry with	غاضب من	ready for	مستعد/جاهز لـ
as a consequence,	كنتيجة لذلك	sorry for	أسف/حزين علي
as well as this	بالإضافة لذلك	take part in	يشارك في
for a while	لفترة من الوقت	thanks to	بفضل - بسبب
for instance,	علي سبيل المثال		

5 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

agree with	يتفق مع	keep on	يستمر في
believe in	يؤمن بـ	learn about	يتعلم عن
carry on	يستمر في	learn from	يتعلم من
disagree with	يختلف مع	pick ... up	يوصل - يلتقط
get on with	يُخسِن التعامل مع	prefer to	يفضّل أن
go along with	يتفق مع	support ... with ...	يدعم ... بـ ...

strange / stranger

- **strange = odd (adj)** غريب - غير مألوف - غير منطقي
- I don't understand your strange decision. She hasn't done anything wrong to make you fire her.
- Mothers always ask their children not to take anything from strange people.
- **stranger (n)** شخص غريب (لا أعرفه)
- Mothers always ask their children not to take anything from strangers.
- **stranger** شخص غريب (لا أعرفه)
- A person from Alexandria is a stranger in Minia.
- **foreigner** شخص أجنبي (من دولة أخرى)
- Many foreigners visit Aswan in winter. Most of them are German.

لاحظ الفرق بين:

expert - experienced

- **expert (in- on - at) (adj)** خبير (متخصص في مجال)
- He is expert in / on / at teaching.
- **experienced (in) (adj)** لديه خبرة من كثرة المواقف والتجارب التي مر بها
- My father is an experienced farmer.

لاحظ الفرق بين:

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

- **MRQ : Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :**

1. It's a widely-known fact that working hard success. (كفر شكر ٢٠٢٣)
a. leads to b. results from c. leads
d. brings e. buys
2. The synonyms of "lucky" are and (منيا القمح ٢٠٢٣)
a. unlucky b. helpless c. fortunate
d. poor e. happy
3. We sometimes make (الشهداء ٢٠٢٣)
a. notes b. well c. research
d. sports e. mistakes
4. You can find information about anything you're online. (شرق المنصورة ٢٠٢٣)
a. interested in b. sorry about c. keen on
d. different from e. full of

5. The doctors said that the patient's case was and he needed an operation.

(أدفو ٢٠٢٣)

- a. serious b. secure c. safe
d. quiet e. dangerous

6. You can do things

- a. well b. serious c. good
d. better e. bad

7. We say that someone does

- a. experience b. experiences c. experiments
d. friends e. sports

• ☆ MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. He is an driver.

(أبو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)

- a. experts b. experience c. experienced d. a & b

2. Engineers have a car engine that runs on electricity.

- a. built b. missed c. lost d. failed

3. The experiments I have needed a lot of time and effort.

- a. become b. done c. made d. a & c

4. Our school open days for activities.

- a. misses b. does c. builds d. runs

5. Don't upset. We are your family and we are ready to help and support you.

- a. feel b. start c. break d. have

6. Those who never work hard will in life and work.

- a. succeed b. success c. fail d. failure

7. A sociable اجتماعي person finds it easy to others.

- a. get around b. get on c. get on with d. b & c

8. He got high marks. a consequence, his father bought him a present.

- a. At b. For c. Like d. As

9. Our parents support us everything we need.

- a. of b. with c. from d. as

10. He is in driving.

- a. expert b. experienced c. experience d. a & b

11. To me, he looks

- a. strange b. stranger c. strangely d. a & b

12. He is a to me.

- a. strange b. stranger c. strangely d. a & b

3 Video script section

Most **young people**⁽¹⁾ go to school every day and have lessons with other children, but not everyone does this. In some countries, students can learn at home **instead**⁽²⁾ and their teachers are usually their parents.

We call this way of learning "**home-schooling**"⁽³⁾. Home-schooling is useful for young people who live **a long way from**⁽⁴⁾ a school, and it's becoming more popular today because students can easily use computers to learn **wherever**⁽⁵⁾ they are. Home-schooling is also useful for students who are sick and cannot go to a school every day.

A good thing about home-schooling is that children can learn at a time and in a place that's best for them, **rather than**⁽⁶⁾ following a school timetable. But, on the other hand, home-schooling isn't **right for**⁽⁷⁾ everyone. Home-schooled children might **feel lonely**⁽⁸⁾ because it can be **harder for**⁽⁹⁾ them to make friends. They may not be able to **do sports**⁽¹⁰⁾ with other young people either.

- (1) الشباب
- (2) بدلاً من
- (3) التعليم المنزلي
- (4) مسافة بعيدة عن
- (5) أينما
- (6) فضلاً عن
- (7) جيد لـ
- (8) يشعر بالوحدة
- (9) صعب على
- (10) يمارس رياضة

PART IV LANGUAGE

General Exercise On Language

● Apply

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. He always to the library when he was young. (البجيرة ٢٠٢٣)
a. had gone b. has been c. went d. was going
2. Sam have a bike when he was 18. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)
a. would b. will c. used to d. should
3. The lady taken to hospital in an ambulance after the fire last night. (القاهرة الجديدة ٢٠٢٣)
a. will be b. had been c. is d. was
4. Before to bed, she had finished her homework. (منوف ٢٠٢٣)
a. had gone b. going c. goes d. went
5. After I had done my homework, I to bed. (حلوان ٢٠٢٣)
a. going b. had gone c. go d. went

6. I didn't leave my office until I my work. (منطقة أسبوط الأزهرية - علمي ٢٠٢٣)
- a. finish b. finishes c. had finished d. was finished
7. Did you a secretary for your office?
- a. find b. found c. was found d. had found
8. a secretary found for your office?
- a. Did b. Had c. Was d. Has
9. My uncle didn't remember the promise he made.
- a. has b. had c. had to d. is
10. My uncle didn't remember the promise that made by him.
- a. has b. had c. had been d. is
11. I into a good family from the south of Egypt in 1976.
- a. bore b. was born c. had been born d. have been born
12. I didn't answer any question I had read it carefully.
- a. because b. until c. so d. once
13. When Mariam was young, she used to in London.
- a. lives b. living c. live d. lived
14. she was a little girl, she wanted to be an actress.
- a. Before b. After c. When d. On
15. He had left the house when it began to rain.
- a. recently b. no sooner c. hardly d. then
16. We went to bed we had finished our jobs.
- a. before b. till c. after d. by the time
17. The secretary finished the report before the manager arrived.
- a. had already b. has already c. has just d. was already

2 Special cases

18. Having my homework, I started to watch the match. (الرحمانية ٢٠٢٣)
- a. I did b. done c. I had done d. do
19. No sooner the noise than we rushed to the spot. (جهينة ٢٠٢٣)
- a. we heard b. we did hear c. we had he d. had we heard
20. It wasn't until I my homework that I took a rest. (البحيرة ٢٠٢٣)
- a. have done b. had done c. was done d. am doing

21. had her dinner, she washed the dishes. (كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)
a. Having b. Have c. Had d. Has
22. Before the medicine, he had eaten a sandwich.
a. had taken b. took c. taking d. was taken
23. The bus when I arrived at the station, so I didn't catch it.
a. leaves b. hadn't left c. has left d. had left
24. The bus when I arrived at the station, so I didn't miss it.
a. leaves b. left c. has left d. had left
25. Mr Mohammed bought a car after he how to drive.
a. learning b. being learned c. had learned d. having learned
26. Mr Mohammed bought a car after how to drive.
a. learning b. being learned c. had learned d. learned
27. We Aswan many times before, but last winter we enjoyed ourselves more than ever.
a. were visiting b. were visited c. have visited d. had visited
28. I had my lunch. After that, I to bed.
a. had gone b. went c. go d. gone
29. He missed the bus because he up late.
a. gets b. has got c. had got d. was getting
30. Hardly had the singer finished his song when all fans
a. cheered b. had cheered c. have cheered d. cheer
31. He to prison because he had committed ارتكب several crimes.
a. was gone b. was going c. had gone d. went
32. He to prison because he had committed ارتكب several crimes.
a. was sent b. was sending c. had sent d. sent
33. He to sit down until he had apologized.
a. didn't allow b. doesn't allow
c. wasn't allowed d. hadn't allowed
34. Ahmed was crying because he over.
a. has fallen b. was fallen c. had fallen d. had been fallen

3 Check your understanding

35. "I went shopping. That was an hour before I started to prepare dinner."
Which of the following gives the nearest meaning to this quotation ?
- a. As soon as I had gone shopping, I started to prepare dinner.
 - b. As soon as I had done the shopping, I started to prepare dinner.
 - c. On going shopping, I started to prepare dinner.
 - d. An hour after I had done the shopping, I started to prepare dinner.
36. "I called him, so he left the office.". This means
- a. he had left by the time I called him.
 - b. he didn't leave after I had called him.
 - c. he left just before I called him.
 - d. he didn't leave until I had called him.
37. Having done her homework, she went out to play. This means that
- a. she went out to play just before doing homework.
 - b. she didn't go out to play until she had done her homework.
 - c. she didn't do her homework until she had gone out to play.
 - d. she went out to play. After that, she had done her homework.
38. While drinking juice, Sama was chatting with her friends online. This means that
- a. Sama was drinking juice.
 - b. Sama's friends were drinking juice.
 - c. Sama and her friends were drinking juice.
 - d. Sama said her friends were not drinking juice.
39. Feeling tired, Ahmed preferred not to go to school. What does this mean ?
- a. Ahmed went to school although he was tired.
 - b. Feeling well, Ahmed preferred not to go to school.
 - c. Ahmed felt unwell, so he preferred to stay at home.
 - d. Not feeling well, Ahmed preferred to go to school.



GRAMMATICAL HINTS

When/because + subj. + verb ... = (inf. + ing) ...

ex. - He is much happier when he learns at home.

- He is much happier at home.

a. learns b. to learn c. learn d. learning

ex. - I got bored because of reading all the long details.

= I got bored all the long details.

a. to read b. reading c. I read d. for reading

who / which + that+ verb ... = (inf. + ing) ...

ex. - Look at the pictures of people who learn at home.

= Look at the pictures of people at home.

a. learning b. are learning c. learn d. they learn

7 لاحظ استخدام (instead – instead of) :

instead / instead of (ذلك) بدلا من

- تُستخدم (instead) كظرف في بداية أو نهاية الجملة الثانية:

ex. - She didn't go to Cairo. Instead, she went to Alexandria.

- I didn't go out. I watched a film at home instead.

- تُستخدم (instead of) كحرف جر ويأتي بعدها (noun) أو (inf. + ing) :

ex. - Can I use a tablet instead of (using) a laptop?

- يمكن أن يُستخدم ضمير المفعول بعد (instead of) وقبل (inf. + ing) لتوضيح الفاعل المقصود:

ex. - The children of rich people have lessons with a teacher who came to their homes instead of them going to school.

8 لاحظ استخدام (in addition – in addition to) :

بالإضافة إلى (inf. + ing) / + n. in addition to

ex. - In addition to learning from their teachers, students learn from each other.

بالإضافة إلى ذلك subj. + verb in addition +

ex. - Students learn from their teachers. In addition, they learn from each other.

9 لاحظ استخدام (thanks to) بمعنى (بسبب / بفضل) :

بسبب / بفضل (inf. + ing) / + n. thanks to

ex. - Thanks to the good weather, the ship sailed quickly.

- He succeeded in his exams thanks to studying hard.

١٠ لاحظ استخدام (such as) بمعنى (مثل) عند إعطاء أمثلة :

مثل such as = like

ex. - I have visited some European countries, such as England and France.
= I have visited some European countries like England and France.

- تُستخدم (like) وليس (such as) عند تشبيه شيء بآخر:

ex. - The Egyptian team wear red, white and black, like the colours of Egypt's flag.

Exercise On Language Hints

● ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My dad couldn't attend his friend's daughter's wedding due to his illness, so he sent me (سمنود ٢٠٢٣)
a. instead of b. instead c. in addition d. in detail
2. He is a writer.
a. successful b. successfully c. success as d. a & c
3. Some insects are green the plants among which they live.
a. like b. such as c. a & b d. such
4. Foods cheese and fish are very useful.
a. like b. such as c. a & b d. such
5. meat, mum prepared potatoes.
a. In addition b. In addition to c. Instead d. As well
6. Mum prepared meat., she prepared potatoes.
a. In addition b. In addition to c. Instead d. As well
7. going out, he watched a film at home.
a. In addition b. In additions c. Instead d. Instead of
8. Ayam El-Sadat is Ahmed Zaki's film ever.
a. the best b. best c. well d. good
9. The team of scientists done a great job.
a. has b. have c. a & b d. was
10. The team of scientists who you have seen here done a great job.
a. has b. have c. a & b d. was
11. The team of scientists which you have seen here done a great job.
a. has b. have c. a & b d. was

1 Reading

★ Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢٣)

Thomas Edison lit up the world with his invention of the electric light. Without him, the world might still be a dark place. He invented over 1200 other things. Edison attended school for about two months. His mother taught him a few things, but he was mostly self-educated. His natural curiosity led him to start experimenting at a young age with electrical and mechanical things at home. When he was 12 years old, he got his first job. He became a newsboy on a train. He set up a laboratory in a baggage car of the train so that he could continue his experiments in his spare time. He was fired when he accidentally set fire to the floor of the baggage car, but he continued to conduct his experiments. Thomas Edison was totally deaf in one ear and hard of hearing in the other, but thought of his deafness as a blessing in many ways. He called himself a "two-shift man" because he worked 16 out of 24 hours. Thomas Edison died and left numerous inventions that improved the quality of life all over the world.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

- Edison considered his deafness a/an
a. disadvantage b. blessing c. necessity d. obstacle
- Thomas Edison attended school for
a. two weeks b. two years c. sixty days d. sixteen days
- What is Edison's most important invention mentioned?
a. electric car b. TV c. watch d. electric light
- Edison lost his first job because he
a. was lazy
b. set fire to the floor of the baggage car
c. was mad
d. set fire in his invention
- Thomas Edison could hardly
a. speak b. listen c. hear d. sleep
- But for Edison, the world would be
a. dark b. bright c. crystal d. smooth
- The underlined word "accidentally" means
a. by mistake b. on purpose c. by chance d. in time

2 Email Writing كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني

From :
 To :
 Subject : The development of education in Egypt.
 Dear,

How are you? I hope you and your family are well. I'm very pleased to write this email to you. I'll tell you about the development of education in Egypt.

We all agree that education is the most important aspect in the development of any country. When a country has a good educational system, it has good doctors, engineers, teachers, scientists ... etc.

It is known that the old educational system was out-of-date. It depended on memorization الحفظ and indoctrination التلقين. Students studied only for exams. After the exams, students forgot everything they'd learnt. Nearly all students didn't enjoy learning as it was boring and tiring. How can we make learning more enjoyable and useful?

Egypt has moved to a new educational system. The new system adapts student-centered instruction (تدريس قائم على الطالب) through interactive activities and group work. Students are engaged in hands-on activities and projects which enhance their skills and abilities to be more creative and independent learners. Learning outcomes mainly aim to help students develop their self-learning skills and communication skills.

Assessment will measure students' understanding. Students will be asked to apply what they have learned in meaningful situations and contexts. Exams will be given and marked digitally using tablets students already have.

We hope that would help new generations to be equipped for rapid changes in our world. What do you think? Looking forward to hearing from you.

Love from me,

3 Translation الترجمة

1. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. Modern education systems try to improve students' abilities. Scientific and cultural abilities are really vital and important. (المدىودية ٢٠٢٣)

- a. تُحاول نُظُم التعليم الحديثة أن تطور قدرات الطلاب، وتُعتبر القدرات الثقافية حيوية ومهمة جداً.
 b. تُحاول نُظُم التعليم الحديثة أن تطور قدرات الطلاب، وتُعتبر القدرات العلمية والثقافية حيوية جداً.
 c. تُحاول نُظُم التعليم الحديثة أن تطور قدرات الطلاب، وتُعتبر القدرات العلمية والثقافية حيوية ومهمة جداً.
 d. تُحاول نُظُم التعليم الحديثة أن تطور الطلاب، وتُعتبر القدرات الثقافية حيوية ومهمة جداً.

2. Students should know how to be self-determined, have time management, so they should try to learn the necessary life skills for that.

(دمياط ٢٠٢٣)

- a. علي الطلاب أن يعرفوا كيف يحددوا مصيرهم وأن تكون لديهم القدرة على تنظيم أوقاتهم، ولذلك لابد أن يتعلموا المهارات الحياتية الضرورية.
- b. علي الطلاب أن يتعلموا كيف يحددوا مصيرهم وأن تكون لديهم القدرة على تنظيم أوقاتهم، ولذلك فهم يتعلمون المهارات الحياتية الضرورية لذلك.
- c. علي الطلاب أن يعرفوا كيف يحددوا مصيرهم وأن تكون لديهم القدرة على تنظيم أوقاتهم، ولذلك لابد أن يتعلموا المهارات الحياتية الضرورية لذلك.
- d. علي الطلاب أن يحددوا مصيرهم وأن تكون لديهم القدرة على تنظيم الوقت، ولذلك كان عليهم أن يتعلموا المهارات الحياتية الضرورية.

2. Choose the correct English translation from a , b , c or d :

١. يجب إعطاء التعليم والمعلمين قدراً أكبر من الاهتمام، فهما الركيزتان الرئيسيتان اللتان تعتمد عليهما نهضة المجتمعات.
(العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٣)

- a. Education and teachers should be given much more interesting because they are the two main bases on which the renaissance of societies depends.
- b. Education and teachers should be given much more interest because they are the two main bases on which the renaissance of societies depends.
- c. Education and teachers should be given much more interesting because they are the two mean bases on which the renaissance of societies depends.
- d. Education and teachers should be given much more interested because they are the two main bases on which the renaissance of societies depends.

٢. فيها حاجة حلوة: اصطف الطلاب على الجانبين لعمل ممر شرفي تعبيراً عن حبهم لمعلم اللغة الإنجليزية.

(الدامول ٢٠٢٣)

- a. It has something nice: the students lined up on both sides to make an honorary passage for the teacher of English.
- b. It has something nice: the students lined up on both sides to make a honorary corridor to express their love for the teacher of English.
- c. It has something nice: the students lined on every side to form an honorary corridor to express their love for the teacher of English.
- d. It has something nice: the students lined up on both sides to make an honorary corridor to express their love for the teacher of English.

education

- **educate (v)** يُعَلِّم (في مدرسة / جامعة ...)
 - This school educates disabled children.
 - I was educated in Minia University.
 - **educate (about / in / on) (v)** يُنَقِّف (في)
 - This programme educates mothers about children's health problems.
 - **education (n)** التعليم / التدريس (في مدرسة / جامعة ...)
 - I want my children to have a good education.
 - **educated (adj)** مُتَعَلِّم ≠ **uneducated (adj)** غير مُتَعَلِّم
 - Sama is a well-educated girl.
 - **educational (adj)** تعليمي
 - The educational system must be developed يتطور.
- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات اللفظية التالية:
- have / get / receive an education لديه / يحصل على تعليم
 - give / provide education يُوفّر تعليم
 - enter education يلتحق بالتعليم
 - leave education يترك التعليم
 - state / public education التعليم الحكومي
 - private education التعليم الخاص
 - primary / preparatory / secondary education التعليم الابتدائي / الإعدادي / الثانوي

bully

- **bully (n)** بلطجي
 - All bullies must be sent to prison.
- **bully (v)** يبلطج - يتنمر
 - If you continue to bully people in your area, I'll arrest you.
- **bully (... into) (v)** يبتز - يساوم
 - He bullied us into agreeing to his plan or we will be fired يُفصل من العمل.
- **bullying (n)** البلطجة
 - The government will never tolerate bullying تسمح به.

schooling

- **school (n)** مدرسة (اسم معدود)
 - Sohaila is a student in a secondary school.

• school (n)

الدراسة - فترة الدراسة - اليوم الدراسي (اسم غير معدود)

- Rodayna started school in 2018. الدراسة
- He is one of my old friends from school. فترة الدراسة
- School begins at 7:15. اليوم الدراسي

• school (ed) (in) (v)

يُدرّس - يُفَقِّه - يُدرَّب على - يَرَوِّض

- He was schooled in teamwork.
- I was schooled in the yellow building over there.

• schooling (n)

التعليم في المدارس (اسم غير معدود)

- My mother had only six years of schooling.

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية:

- start school يبدأ الدراسة
- attend a school يذهب إلى مدرسة
- leave school ينهى الدراسة
- a high school مدرسة ثانوية
- a boarding school مدرسة داخلية

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Congratulations! Your shot is
a. success b. a success c. successful d. b & c
2. You spend a long time to a hunting dog.
a. chase b. evacuate c. school d. succeed
3. He her into paying 50,000 pounds to return her stolen car.
a. asked b. told c. made d. bullied
4. Wars thousands of children.
a. bully b. orphan c. varies d. include
5. Mum asked me to tea in the shopping list.
a. include b. advertise c. improve d. care

Advanced Exercise on Language

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. my arrival home, I saw that no one was there.
a. During b. On c. While d. As
2. A week ago, I sold my old car. I it since I started my job as a teacher.
a. has b. have had c. was having d. had had
3. Once I the correct answer, my teacher clapped his hands to me.
a. had been chosen b. chooses
c. choose d. chose
4. I had my lunch. After that, I to bed.
a. had gone b. went c. go d. gone

Test on Unit 9

- **Apply**

αυτοῦ



اختبار الكتروني

1. Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. "Keeping animals and birds in Zoos is cruel." The antonyms of the word "cruel" are
 a. strange b. merciful c. violent
 d. brave e. kind
2. The words and are antonyms.
 a. succession b. succeed c. failure
 d. schooling e. success

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. He was sent to a school in Cairo to study architecture. (المعصرة ٢٠٢٣)
a. broading b. board c. boarding d. broadening
2. All society members must start a campaign to stop and its dangerous effects. (إطسا ٢٠٢٣)
a. voluntary work b. production c. bullying d. education
3. Our is so kind. All children love her because she teaches them kindly. (منطقة أسبوط الأزهرية - أدبي ٢٠٢٣)
a. nurse b. servant c. governess d. guard
4. Jane is a/an Her parents died in a car accident last year. (أسوان ٢٠٢٣)
a. governess b. housewife c. author d. orphan
5. '.....' and 'relative' have one meaning in common. They both can mean a member of one's family.
a. Relationship b. Relation c. Relativity d. Relating
6. The manager wants to another secretary.
a. fail b. apply c. miss d. employ
7. As an expert in farming, he has a lot of about plants.
a. ability b. imagination c. knowledge d. confidence
8. A new factory in our town last year. (حلوان ٢٠٢٣)
a. built b. was built c. was building d. will be built
9. you use to play with dolls? (التبين ٢٠٢٣)
a. Are b. Is c. Did d. Does
10. After my father's car, he went to the police station to report the theft. (إطسا ٢٠٢٣)
a. was stealing b. had been stolen
c. were stolen d. had stolen
11. my arrival at the office, I opened the windows. (بولاق ٢٠٢٣)
a. On b. While c. During d. When
12. No sooner had we heard the noise we rushed to the balcony. (أوسيم ٢٠٢٣)
a. then b. that c. thus d. than

13. I turned off the light before to bed.

(ادفو ٢٣٠٢)

- a. go b. going c. went d. to go

14. Fortunately, my father found the wallet he

(ادفو ٢٣٠٢)

- a. has lost b. loses c. had lost d. was lost

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

(بني سويف ٢٣٠٢)

Winter is cold in some places. Many plants do not grow during winter. Some plants die. Snow and ice may cover the ground. It can be hard for animals to find food during winter. Animals get through this time in many ways. Birds and butterflies can fly. Many of them do not stick around for the winter. They leave. They go to a place with nice weather. Then they come home in the spring. We call this migration. Migrating is a good way to avoid the cold.

Another good way to avoid the cold is to sleep through it. Many animals hide during the winter. They save their energy. They do not eat. They live off of their fat. They do this until food returns. We call this hibernation. Snakes, frogs, and bears hibernate. Some animals store food in their homes. They do not sleep all winter. They live on what they have saved in the summer and fall. This is what squirrels and raccoons do.

Other animals do not leave or hide. They must survive. Sometimes nature helps them out. Some animals grow thicker coats in the winter. Other animals change colour. The arctic fox is brown in the summer. His coat turns white in the winter for safety. Winter may be pretty. It is nice to see snow on the trees. But it is dangerous too.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. What is the main idea of this text?

- a. Animals do funny and interesting things.
b. Most flowers do not grow during the wintertime.
c. Animals survive the winter in many ways.
d. We must help each other.

2. Which of these animals survives winter by eating stored food?

- a. Bears b. Raccoons c. Frogs d. Birds

3. Why does the arctic fox's coat change white during winter?

- a. The white coat is prettier.
b. White absorbs the sun and is warmer.
c. The white coat helps him hide from its enemies.
d. His body saves energy by reducing hair color.

4. What does it mean to migrate?

- a. To grow a thicker coat.
b. To move somewhere warmer for a season.
c. To enter a long sleep and survive off of body fat.
d. To change colors.

5. Which animal does not hibernate?
a. foxes b. frogs c. snakes d. bears
6. How would a thicker coat help an animal survive winter?
a. A thicker coat would help an animal hide better.
b. A thicker coat would protect an animal against attacks.
c. A thicker coat would help an animal stay warm.
d. A thicker coat would help an animal migrate.
7. Which of these animals migrates during the winter?
a. Foxes b. Bears c. Snakes d. Butterflies

4. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

We must bring up our children on respect for diversity and accepting others.

(سنورس ٢٠٢٣)

- a. يجب أن نحضر أبنائنا في احترام الاختلاف وقبول الآخرين.
b. يجب أن نربي أولادنا على احترام التنوع وقبول الآخرين.
c. يجب أن نربي أطفالنا على احترام التعددية وقبول الآخرين.
d. يجب أن نربي أطفالنا على احترام الخلاف وقبول الآخرين.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

نفخر بعلمائنا العظماء الذين حققوا إنجازات عظيمة في العديد من المجالات مثل الطب والهندسة.

(يوسف الصديق ٢٠٢٣)

- a. We pride of our great scientists who have made great achievements in a lot of fields like medicine and engineering.
b. We are proud of our great scientists who have done great achievements in a lot of fields like medicines and engineering.
c. We are proud of our great scientists who have made great achievements in a lot of fields like medicine and engineering.
d. We are proud of our great scientists who have made great achievements in a lot of fields like medicines and engineering.

5. Answer the following questions:

1. If you were Jim, would you sail to the Hispaniola on your own ?

2. What kind of person do you think Hands was ? Why ?

3. How did Jim prove to be kind ?

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:

“The Importance of Education”

General Exercise on Units 7,8&9

Collected from SB & WB

تدريبات مجمعة من كتاب الطالب وكتاب التدريبات

* Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. Omar, has a new on his smartphone to understand foreign languages.
a. chat b. app c. internet d. click
2. The students answered all the questions in the and then checked their scores.
a. feedback b. invention c. quiz d. computer
3. My dad uses if he doesn't know which road to take.
a. vehicle b. app c. CPR d. GPS
4. In the future, we will have the to travel to space on our holidays.
a. technology b. invention c. internet d. robot
5. Kamal his homework when he went to the cinema.
a. had finished b. finished c. was finishing d. would finish
6. You make a loud noise in the library or you will get into trouble.
a. can b. should c. mustn't d. must
7. If Magda a language course, she would be able to speak to foreigners.
a. does b. will do c. did d. would do
8. What would you do if your friend an accident ?
a. have b. would have c. has d. had
9. When the alarm rings, we the building.
a. would leave b. left c. leaving d. leave
10. I have a bad cold, so it is difficult for me to
a. breathe b. research c. wash d. respond
11. We should always put our plastic rubbish in a separate
a. wrap b. bin c. dust d. floor
12. A new school in our village last year.
a. built b. was built c. was building d. had been built
13. Fortunately, the police could the mystery and catch the criminal.
a. solve b. make c. find d. do
14. It's very easy to around in that city because the public transport is cheap and efficient.
a. get b. find c. stay d. say
15. There was an emergency, so the school was
a. serviced b. navigated c. evacuated d. injured
16. The boys could help the injured man because they had learnt about
a. danger b. first aid c. hygiene d. emergency services



UNIT 10

What's your job ?

SB pages 42 : 51 WB pages 108 : 113

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

- **Reading :** An article about jobs
- **Writing :** An email asking for advice ; a personal CV
- **Listening :** Students at a job fair
- **Speaking :** Talking about job opportunities

○ **Language :** Reported speech : statements and questions

○ **Life Skills :** Self-management : Planning for the world of work



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

application(n)	تطبيق - طلب التحاق	reassurance(n)	طَمانينة - سَكينة
applied(adj)	تطبيقي - عملي	reassure(d) (v)	يُطمئن
apply(ied) (v)	يُطبِّق - يتقدم بطلب	reassuring(adj)	مُطمِّن
apprenticeship(n)	(فترة) التدريب المهني	reward(ed) (v - n)	يكافئ - مكافأة
attendant(n)	مُرافق - خادم	rewarding(adj)	مُجزِي
Casualty Department	قسم الطوارئ	skill(n)	مِهارة
casualty(n)	خسارة - حالة وفاة	stress(ed) (v - n)	يضغط - يؤكد على - ضغط
construction(n)	بناء - تشييد	stressful(adj)	ضاغط - مُجهِد
contract(n)	عَقْد - وثيقة تعاقد	succeed (ed) (v)	ينجح
degree(n)	شهادة جامعية - درجة	success(n)	النجاح
industry(n)	صناعة - نشاط اقتصادي	successful(adj)	ناجح
practical(adj)	عملي - تطبيقي	training(n)	تدريب
qualification(n)	مُؤهل - تأهل		
qualified(adj)	مُؤهل / لديه مُؤهل		
qualify(ied) (v)	يتأهل - يؤهل		

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

airline(n)	خط طيران	interested(adj)	مُهتم
career(n)	مِهنة	involve(d) (v)	يشمل / يتضمن
challenge(d) (n - v)	تَحَدِّي - يتحدى	knowledge(n)	المعرفة
characteristics(n)	سمات - خصائص	non-biased(adj)	محايد - غير متحيز
charity(n)	جمعية خيرية	nursing(n)	التمرريض
chemistry(n)	الكيمياء	obviously(adv)	من الواضح / بوضوح
college(n)	مدرسة عليا - كُلية	option(n)	خيار - بديل
cycle(d) (v)	يقود دراجة	particular(adj)	مُحدَّد
deadline(n)	موعد نهائي	products(n)	منتجات
despite(preposition)	برغم	progress(n)	التقدم
develop(ed) (v)	يُطوِّر - يكتشف	pursue(d) (v)	يواصل - يتعقب - يلاحق
eligible(adj)	مُؤهل - ذو جدارة	route(n)	مسار - خط سير
frightened(adj)	خائف	the public(n)	الجمهور - عامة الناس

frustrating(adj)	مُخِيب	tiring(adj)	مُتْعِب - مُرهق
graduate(d) (v - n)	يُتَخَرِّج - خَرِج	trade(n)	تجارة - حرفة
hold - held(v)	يقيم / يعقد	vast(adj)	واسع - عريض
incredibly(adv)	بشكل غير معقول	ward(n)	عَبر (قسم في مستشفى)
Information Technology (IT)	تكنولوجيا المعلومات		
interact(ed) (v)	يتفاعل		

3 Definitions التعريفات

Memorise	Understand
apply(ied) (v) يُطَبِّق - يتقدم بطلب	to make a formal request, usually in writing
apprenticeship(n) (فترة) التدريب المهني	(a period of time) working in order to learn skills needed to do a job
attendant(n) عامل - قائم بالخدمة	a person whose job involves helping the public
casualty department قسم الطوارئ	emergency room in a hospital
construction(n) بناء - تشييد	the work of building something
contract(n) عَقْد - وثيقة تعاقد	a legal agreement
degree(n) شهادة جامعية - درجة	a qualification you receive when you finish university
industry(n) صناعة - نشاط صناعي أو عملي	a particular type of business that produces a particular type of goods or services
practical(adj) عملي - تطبيقي	relating to real activities and events
qualifications(n) مؤهلات	skills or knowledge that make you eligible for a job or work
rewarding(adj) مُجْزِي - مُكَافِئ	doing something that makes you feel good
skill(n) مهارة	the ability to do something well
stressful(adj) مُرهق - مُؤْزِق	causing worry

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- Gamal wants to do a/an to learn how to be a builder. (جهاينة ٢٠٢٣)
a. attendant b. industry c. apprenticeship d. degree
- In Egypt, tourism has greatly developed for the past 5 years. (أسوان ٢٠٢٣)
a. apprenticeship b. constructions c. industry d. graduations

3. Your father's condition is really serious. He needs to be taken to the at once. (منوف ٢٠٢٣)
 a. casualty b. railway c. aquarium d. swing
4. The doctor tried to me that my father would be okay. (شبراخيت ٢٠٢٣)
 a. care b. know c. reassure d. insure
5. The of the skyscraper started in 2020. (شبراخيت ٢٠٢٣)
 a. conclusion b. community c. communication d. construction
6. He teaches at university and has a in Biology. (اوسيم ٢٠٢٣)
 a. degree b. grade c. qualifications d. mark
7. We need solutions to our current economic problems. (كوم حماده ٢٠٢٣)
 a. stressful b. practical c. patient d. passionate
8. I'm going to look for another job because the salary I get is not
 a. qualified b. rewarding c. practical d. stressful (ادفو ٢٠٢٣)
9. Mr Omar is a highly teacher. That's why he is so successful.
 a. applied b. reassuring c. qualified d. stressful (ساقلة ٢٠٢٣)
10. To get a good job nowadays, you should have some personal
 a. quantities b. qualities c. disabilities d. qualifications (كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)
11. Teenagers need love, encouragement and from parents. (البحيرة ٢٠٢٣)
 a. reassurance b. connect c. challenge d. availability
12. Exams can be a time for students. They always feel worried and stressed. (غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)
 a. staring b. stressful c. stressed d. enjoyable
13. I want to join the faculty of medicine and as a doctor.
 a. apply b. reward c. reassure d. qualify
14. We study physics in secondary three.
 a. applied b. reassuring c. qualified d. stressful
15. A good leader has the ability to work under
 a. degree b. success c. industry d. stress
16. The at the petrol station asked me if I wanted to fuel up. (يملا الخزان بالوقود)
 a. communicator b. attendant c. good player d. firefighter
17. helps you get or improve the skills needed for work.
 a. Stress b. Availability c. Training d. Chemistry
18. He got a for his hard work.
 a. cuisine b. certificate c. qualification d. reward
19. I asked my lawyer محامي to revise the of my new flat.
 a. qualification b. contract c. cuisine d. industry
20. If you work hard for a long time without a break, you will be
 a. applied b. graduated c. cycled d. stressed

21. I hope I will in achieving my goal.
a. apply b. succeed c. reassure d. qualify
22. He is a/an father. He has taught his children how to be hard working and depend on themselves.
a. successful b. dishonest c. legal d. aged
23. Speaking is an important language
a. skill b. reward c. certificate d. college
24. Modern technology is to all fields of work and entertainment.
a. applied b. succeeded c. reassured d. qualified
25. This can be downloaded from Google Store.
a. application b. casualty c. construction d. reassurance
26. I knew I was right when I saw the look on my teacher's face.
a. applied b. reassuring c. qualified d. stressful

2 Important Vocabulary

27. You should apply for the job before the
a. redline b. linedead c. deadline d. offline (رشيد ٢٠٢٣)
28. The teacher helped students to their creative writing skills.
a. lose b. destroy c. damage d. develop (المرج ٢٠٢٣)
29. Climbing the mountain was very, but amusing.
a. challenge b. challenging c. changing d. danger (كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)
30. The trip programme a visit to the museum.
a. involves b. holds c. challenges d. pursues
31. If you to school, it helps you keep fit.
a. support b. graduate c. cycle d. stress
32. He me to a chess game.
a. pursued b. held c. challenged d. involved
33. My father was angry when he knew my exam results.
a. rewarding b. stressed c. professional d. frustrating
34. She got married immediately after she had from university.
a. supported b. graduated c. cycled d. stressed
35. The meeting will be in a five-star hotel.
a. held b. pursued c. challenged d. involved
36. As soon as I qualify from university, I will do post-..... studies.
a. knowledge b. deadline c. graduate d. teammate
37. You should always your dreams. Never stop trying.
a. pursue b. cycle c. challenge d. involve

3 Definitions

38. is a period of time working in order to learn new needed skills.
a. Emergency b. Apprenticeship c. Allergy d. Invention
(منطقة أسبوط الأزهرية - أدبي ٢٠٢٣)

39. A is defined as an agreement between two or more parties, to perform a certain job or work. (Tablet Exam 2022)
 a. degree b. disagreement c. certificate d. contract
40. To is to make a formal request, usually in writing.
 a. reassure b. qualify c. apply d. reward
41. The adjective describes something that makes you feel good.
 a. flexible b. rewarding c. reliable d. qualified
42. means learning the skills you need for a job.
 a. Rewarding b. Applying c. Training d. Contracting
43. A /An is a person whose job involves helping the public.
 a. attendant b. fair c. experience d. expert
44. is the work of building something.
 a. Opportunity b. Construction c. Knowledge d. Firefighting
45. A is a qualification you receive when you finish university.
 a. quality b. graduate c. pay d. degree
46. is a particular type of business that produces.
 a. Vet b. Statement c. Industry d. Stand

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations المتلازمات اللفظية

do	a degree in يدرس للحصول على شهادة في	have	medical knowledge لديه معلومات طبية
	training يحصل على تدريب		a talk with يتحدث مع
do/get	a job يؤدي وظيفة / مهمة	have/get	a degree in يحصل على شهادة جامعية في
	an apprenticeship with يحصل على تدريب عملي لدي		make furniture يصنع أثاث منزلي
get/find	a job يحصل على وظيفة	meet	a deadline يُنقذ ... في الموعد المُحدد

2 Synonyms المترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
apply يُطبّق	make use of, harness
frightened خائف	scared, afraid
industry نشاط اقتصادي	activity, business
reassuring مُطمئِن	comforting
rewarding مُجْزِي	satisfying, worthwhile
stressful ضاغط - مُجْهِد	worrying, demanding
vast واسع / فسيح	giant, huge

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
reassuring مُطمئِن	worrying مُقلِق
practical عملي - تطبيقي	theoretical, impractical نظري
rewarding مُجزِي	unrewarding غير مُجزِي
stressful ضاغط - مُجهِد	relaxing, easy مُريح / سهل
vast واسع / فسيح	small, tiny, narrow ضئيل / ضيق

4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a long way from بعيداً عن	good for مفيد لـ / صالح لـ
a variety of تنوع / تشكيلة من	good to طيب مع
at the weekend في العطلة الأسبوعية	Job Fair ندوة عن الوظائف
at times أحياناً	leave for school يغادر إلى المدرسة
be essential for ضروري لـ	legal agreement اتفاق قانوني
be late for يتأخر علي	like best about أكثر شيء يحبه في
can't wait مُتلهف	not really ليس صحيحاً
caring for people الاهتمام بالناس	popular with محبوب لدي - ذو شعبية مع
good about الجيد في	problem solving حل المشكلات
good at جيد في	

5 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

apply to يتقدم بطلب إلى	communicate with يتواصل مع
break down يتعطل	decide to يقرر أن
care for يهتم لأمر - يُراعي	interact with يتفاعل مع
choose to يختار أن	look for يبحث عن
communicate ... to يُبلغ ... لـ	qualify as يتأهل كـ

6 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

contract - contact	
• contract (n)	عقد (اتفاق مكتوب)
- I have signed the contract. Now, this villa is mine.	
• contact (n)	اتصال - تواصل
- After leaving school, I have had little contact with my schoolmates.	
practical - theoretical	
• practical (adj)	عملي - تطبيقي
- Try to find a practical solution to the problem.	

• **theoretical (adj)**

- Although he has theoretical knowledge المعرفة, he did not succeed in his first job.

نظري

training - exercise

• **training (n)**

تدريب (لاكتساب أو تحسين مهارة معينة)

- You need to do more training to be one of the main players of the team.

• **exercise (n)**

تدريب (بغرض اللياقة أو قياس مهارة معينة)

- I take some exercises after studying the lesson to see how well I have done.

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

• ☆ **MRQ : Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :**

1. "Working with young children could be stressful." The antonyms of "stressful" are (شربين ٢٠٢٣)

- a. easy b. tiring c. hopeful
d. relaxing e. wasteful

2. "Nabil was very frightened because he saw a snake." The other words for "frightened" are (غرب شبرا الخيمة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. afraid b. annoying c. unkind
d. scared e. friendly

3. Your room is compared to mine. You can put many pieces of furniture in it. (المنتزه أول ٢٠٢٣)

- a. giant b. wicked c. minor
d. huge e. tiny

4. He travelled to Germany to a degree in engineering.

- a. make b. do c. give
d. have e. tell

5. You can do

- a. a training b. work experience c. a job
d. much money e. variety

6. "The tourist industry in Egypt is promising." The word "industry" here means

- a. activity b. factory c. mall
d. company e. business

7. Part of my job is after old customers.

- a. look b. looks c. to look
d. to looking e. looking

• ☆ **MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. for the job in the bank should have a degree in accountancy.

- a. Applying b. Applicants c. Applications d. Apply

(شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)

2. My eldest daughter was qualified a pharmacist in 2020. (البديرة ٢٠٢٣)
a. as b. for c. at d. in
3. Hard work always success. (بولاق ٢٠٢٣)
a. thanks b. starts c. brings d. ends
4. He is working hard to the deadline.
a. give b. meet c. tell d. earn
5. 'Stressful' is to 'worrying' as is to 'comforting'.
a. reassuring b. affectionate c. sure d. a & b
6. I applied the embassy السفارة to renew my passport.
a. for b. of c. to d. a & c
7. He succeeded in communicating his message citizens المواطنين.
a. with b. on c. in d. to
8. I live a long way my school.
a. in b. from c. at d. onto
9. All members of the team are now doing the final before the match.
a. degree b. skill c. exercise d. training
10. To lose weight, you need to follow a diet and do more
a. degree b. skill c. exercise d. trainers
11. This solution is It is easy to carry it out.
a. theory b. theoretical c. practice d. practical

PART III

READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

What's your job?

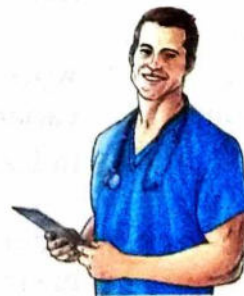
Lesson 1 SB page 42

In this week's article called **What's your job?** We're talking to two young professionals⁽¹⁾ about their work.

Ali works in the **casualty department**⁽²⁾ at a **busy**⁽³⁾ hospital. He says that, **despite**⁽⁴⁾ the long hours and hard work, the job is **incredibly**⁽⁵⁾ **rewarding**⁽⁶⁾.

Why did you choose to become a nurse?

Well, I've always enjoyed **caring for**⁽⁷⁾ people, so it **seemed**⁽⁸⁾ a natural thing to do. I decided to **apply to**⁽⁹⁾ **nursing**⁽¹⁰⁾ **college**⁽¹¹⁾, did my **training**⁽¹²⁾ and then got a job here.



- (1) المحترفين
(2) قسم الطوارئ
(3) مزدحم
(4) برغم
(5) بشكل غير معقول
(6) فخرى
(7) الاهتمام بـ
(8) يبدو
(9) يتقدم بطلب إلى
(10) التمريض
(11) مدرسة عليا - كلية
(12) التدريب

Job fairs are often held to give **non-biased information**⁽⁴⁾ about many **industries**⁽⁵⁾. They can tell you about what qualifications, skills and experience you will need, and you can also find out about what you can expect to earn.

Every job has its **challenges**⁽⁶⁾ and **rewards**⁽⁷⁾ which can affect a person's decision about whether to **pursue**⁽⁸⁾ a career. Equally, some **characteristics**⁽⁹⁾ are **essential for**⁽¹⁰⁾ certain jobs. For example, a medical professional must be **compassionate**⁽¹¹⁾, caring and have excellent **communication skills**⁽¹²⁾.

- (4) معلومات غير منحازة
- (5) الصناعات
- (6) تحديات
- (7) مكافآت - تعويضات
- (8) يتعقب
- (9) سمات
- (10) ضروري لـ
- (11) حنون - رحيم
- (12) مهارات التواصل

PART IV LANGUAGE

Reported Speech الكلام الغير مباشر

1 Reported statements : الجمل الخبرية في الكلام غير المباشر

١ الكلام المباشر هو كلام منقول عن المتحدث بنفس النص و يوضع بين علامات تنصيص ("....") :

ex. - Omar said, "I don't like fish".

= "I don't like fish", said Omar.

(Direct مباشر)

٢ الكلام غير المباشر هو كلام مُبَلَّغ عن المتحدث وتتغير فيه الضمائر والأزمنة و بعض ظروف الزمان والمكان وتُحذف علامات التنصيص والفاصلة :

ex. - Omar said that he didn't like fish.

(Indirect غير مباشر)

٢ يتم تحويل الجملة الخبرية إلى الكلام غير المباشر كالتالي :

١ نبدأ بالمتحدث (speaker).

٢ نستخدم فعل إبلاغ مناسب للجملة الخبرية مثل :

قال شاكيًا - complained - replied - answered - reported - said
.....etc. أبدى ملاحظة - remarked - promised - explained

لاحظ ضرورة استخدام المفعول (المُخاطَب) بعد أفعال الإبلاغ التالية :

(مُخاطَب) + ذَكَرَ - reminded - أكد - assured - told

٢ نستخدم (that) للربط، و يمكن حذفها.

٣ نحذف علامات التنصيص (".....") كما نحذف الفاصلة السفلى (,).

Mini Test 1

• Apply

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Sama said
a. I like fish b. , I liked fish c. , "I like fish". d. a & b
- Sama told me
a. I like fish b. I liked fish c. she likes fish d. she liked fish
- I said happy.
a. I was b. that I was c. a & b d. I am
- Omar his friend was ill.
a. said b. told c. asked d. advised
- Omar his friend he was ill.
a. said b. told c. asked d. advised

Tenses :

الأزمنة :

٥ يتحول الزمن إلى الزمن الأبعد في الكلام الغير مباشر كالتالي :

Direct مباشر	Reported غير مباشر
Present simple - "I play tennis" , he said	Past simple - He said that he played tennis.
Present continuous - "I am watching a film" , she explained.	Past continuous - She explained that she was watching a film.
Past simple - "Nada wrote a letter" , he said.	Past perfect / Past simple - He said that Nada wrote / had written a letter.
Present perfect - "I have seen two lions" , he said to me.	Past perfect - He told me that he had seen two lions.
Past perfect - "I had tidied my room before going out" , he explained.	Past perfect - He explained that he had tidied his room before going out.
Present perfect continuous - "I have been studying for hours" , he said.	Past perfect continuous - He said that he had been studying for hours.

Past continuous - "She was drinking coffee", he said to me.	Past continuous / past perfect continuous - He told me that she was (had been) drinking coffee.
will / can / may - "I will buy a sandwich", he said. - "My mother can make pizza", said Rodayna. - "He may come first", said Nada.	would / could / might - He said that he would buy a sandwich. - Rodayna said that her mother could make pizza. - Nada said that he might come first.
must - She said, "Drivers must follow the traffic lights". (قانون) - "I must phone him tomorrow", she said. (إلتزام في المستقبل) - "We must help mum now", Ali said. (إلتزام في المضارع) - "You must be hungry", I said to her. (استنتاج في المضارع)	must + inf. / would have to + inf. / had to + inf. / must have + p.p. - She said that drivers must follow the traffic lights. - She said that she would have to phone him the day after. - Ali said they had to help mum then. - I told her that she must have been hungry.

٦ لا تتغير الأزمنة في الحالات التالية :

أ. إذا كانت الجملة تعبر عن حقيقة علمية ثابتة :

- ex.** - He said, "Lions eat meat".
 - He said (that) lions eat meat.

ب. إذا كانت الجملة قيلت منذ فترة وجيزة ويدل على ذلك تعبيرات مثل :

said a moment ago – said a minute ago – said a short time ago
 – said just now /etc.

- ex.** - Omar said a moment ago, "I'll buy some clothes tomorrow."
 - Omar said a moment ago that he will buy some clothes tomorrow.

ج. إذا كان فعل القول في المضارع :

- ex.** - Amany says, "I don't like fish."
 - Amany says she doesn't like fish.

د. لا تتحول الأزمنة في الحالتين الشرطيتين الثانية و الثالثة :

- ex.** - "If I had enough money, I would buy a newer car", said Leila.
 = Leila said that if she had enough money, she would buy a newer car.

Mini Test 2

● Apply

● ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "I have a health problem," said Ahmed. Report.
 - a. Ahmed said he has a health problem.
 - b. Ahmed said he had a health problem.
 - c. Ahmed said he had had a health problem.
 - d. b & c
2. "I have had a health problem," said Ahmed. Report.
 - a. Ahmed said he has a problem.
 - b. Ahmed said he had a problem.
 - c. Ahmed said he had had a problem.
 - d. b & c
3. "I had a health problem," said Ahmed. Report.
 - a. Ahmed said he has a health problem.
 - b. Ahmed said he had a health problem.
 - c. Ahmed said he had had a health problem.
 - d. b & c
4. "Every citizen must follow the law." - The president said that every citizen the law.
 - a. must follow
 - b. have to follow
 - c. must have followed
 - d. has followed
5. "I must leave now." - Rodayna said that she leave then.
 - a. must
 - b. had to
 - c. would have to
 - d. have to
6. "I must leave tomorrow." - Rodayna said that she the day after.
 - a. must
 - b. had to
 - c. would have to
 - d. have to
7. "Cairo is the biggest city in Africa," said Mr Ashraf. Mr Ashraf said Cairo the biggest city in Africa.
 - a. is
 - b. was
 - c. a & b
 - d. had been
8. "Water freezes when the temperature is zero or below," said Mr Mamdouh. Mr Mamdouh said water when the temperature is zero or below.
 - a. freezes
 - b. froze
 - c. a & b
 - d. frozen

Time and place adverbs & demonstrative adjectives :

ظروف الزمان والمكان و صفات الإشارة :

٧ تتحول ظروف الزمان و المكان كما يلي:

(لاحظ أن ظروف الزمان و المكان لا تتغير إلا إذا تغير زمان ومكان تبليغ الكلام)

Direct	Reported	Direct	Reported
now	then / at that time	tonight	that night
this	that	today	that day
these	those	the day before yesterday	two days before
here	there		
ago	before	the day after tomorrow	in two days' time
last week	the week before the previous week	next week	the week after the following week the next week
yesterday	the day before the previous day	tomorrow	the day after the following day the next day

ex. - He said, "I bought a car yesterday".

= He said (that) he bought / had bought a car the day before.

- "I am travelling to Aswan tomorrow", she said.

= She said she was travelling to Aswan the day after.

- He said, "I am very busy this month".

= He said that he was very busy that month.

Mini Test 3

• Apply

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. "I will come here again tomorrow."

- Mum said she would go again the following day.

a. here b. there c. their d. theirs

2. "I am leaving today." - He said he was leaving

a. today b. this day c. that day d. the day after

3. "We arrived last month." - She said that they had arrived

a. in a month b. the month after
c. the following month d. the month before

Pronouns :

الضمائر :

٨ تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمُخاطَب كما يلي (فهم معنى الكلام يساعد في تحويل الضمائر) :

I	he / she / you / I	mine	his / hers / yours / mine
we	they / we	ours	theirs / ours
me	him / her / you / me	you (subj)	I / he / she / they / we / you
us	them / us	you (obj)	me / him / her / them / us
my	his / her / your / my	your	my/ his / her / their / our
our	their / our	yours	mine/ his / hers / theirs / ours / yours

ex. - He said, "My mother has called me".

= He said that his mother had called him.

- "I can't lend you my camera", he said to his sister.

= He told his sister that he couldn't lend her his camera.

Mini Test 4

• Apply

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- "I'll surely help you." - Aya told me she would surely help
a. me b. him c. her d. us
- "I'll surely help you." - Aya told Ali and me she would surely help
a. me b. him c. her d. us
- "I'll surely help you." - Aya told mum she would surely help
a. me b. him c. her d. us
- "I'll surely help you." - Aya told Ali and Omar she would surely help
a. me b. him c. her d. them

ملحوظات هامة على الجملة الخبرية في الكلام غير المباشر

١ لا تتحول الأزمنة بعد التعبيرات التالية :

I wish – would rather – would like – it is time / had better

ex. - "I wish I didn't waste my time", said Ahmed.

= Ahmed said (that) he wished he didn't waste his time.

٢ إذا كان المخاطب داخل علامات التنصيص يوضع خارجها بعد فعل القول :

ex. - "I'm hoping to come and see you next week, Menna", Ali said.

= Ali told Menna that he was hoping to go and see her the following week.

٣ في حالة وجود جملتين نستخدم (and that) أو (and added that) :

ex. - He said to me, "I don't understand unit 12. I want you to explain it again."
= He told me that he didn't understand unit 12 and added that he wanted me to explain it again."

٤ لاحظ طريقة تحويل صيغة النصيحة (If I were you, ...) إلى الكلام الغير مباشر:

ex. "If I were you, I'd see a doctor", I said to him = I advised him to see a doctor.

٥ لاحظ تحويل (let's) :

ex. - He said to me, "Let's leave now".
= He suggested leaving then.
= He suggested that we should leave then.

Mini Test 5

• Apply

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Mum said it was time I to bed.
a. go b. went c. have gone d. had gone
- "I will call you, mum." - Leen she would call her.
a. said to b. said to mum c. told d. told mum
- Omar said that he would come to my birthday party he would get me a nice present.
a. that b. and that c. and added that d. b & c
- "If I were you, I would work hard." - Kareem work hard.
a. said if he were I, he would b. said if he had been me, he would
c. said if he is me, he will d. advised me to
- "Let's go for a walk." - Amira out.
a. said let's go b. said let us to go
c. suggested to go d. suggested going

2

Reported «Yes / No» Questions : السؤال بـ «هل» في الكلام غير المباشر :

١ يبدأ السؤال بـ (هل) بأحد الأفعال المساعدة أو الأفعال الناقصة التالية :

Do / Does / Did - Have / Has / Had - Am / Is / Are / Was / Were /
- Can / Could - Will / Would - May / Might - Shall / Should - Must -
Need - Dare

٢ يتم تحويل السؤال بـ (هل) إلى الكلام الغير مباشر كالتالي :

.... + فاعل / مفعول + if / whether + (مخاطب) + asked + المتحدث Speaker -

Speaker + wondered / استفسر / تساءل + المتحدث + if / whether + مفعول / فاعل + -

١ نحذف علامات التنصيص (".....") و نحذف علامه الاستفهام ونضع نقطه مكانها.

٢ تتحول أفعال الإبلاغ كالتالي :

say to / says to + مخاطب → ask / asks + مخاطب
said to + مخاطب → asked + مخاطب

٣ تتحول الأزمنة الي الأبعد مثل الجملة الخبرية.

٤ تتحول ظروف الزمان و المكان مثل الجملة الخبرية.

ex. - "Will you buy this T-shirt?" Ashraf said.

= Ashraf wondered if I would buy that T-shirt.

- "Is anyone here?" he asked.

= He asked if/whether anyone was there.

- "Have you met my sister?" Nada said to Reem.

= Nada asked Reem if she had met her sister.

- "Can you swim, Tarek?" said Omar.

= Omar asked Tarek if he could swim.

٥ عند وجود (do - does) كفعل مساعد فإنها تُحذف ويوضع الفعل الأساسي في زمن الماضي البسيط.

ex. - "Do you get up early, Mariam?" Zamzam said.

= Zamzam asked Mariam if/whether she got up early.

٦ عند وجود (did) كفعل مساعد فإنها تُحذف ويوضع الفعل الأساسي في زمن الماضي التام.

ex. - "Did you see the criminal?" the officer said.

= The officer asked if/whether I had seen the criminal.

٧ بعد (if / whether) يأتي الفاعل أو المفعول ثم الفعل (أي يتحول السؤال الي جملة خبرية)

ex. - "Can you make pizza?" she asked.

= She asked if / whether I could make pizza.

ملحظات للطلاب المتقدمين Notes for Advanced level

١ عندما نستخدم (whether) فهي توحى بالخيار :

ex. - "Do you want to go on foot or by car?" mum asked.

= Mum asked whether I wanted to go on foot or by car.

٢ تُعتبر (whether) أكثر دقة في حالة وجود (if) الشرطية حتى لا تتكرر أداة الشرط :

ex. - "Will you drive to work if you have a car?" Mohammed said to me.

= Mohammed asked me whether I would drive to work if I had a car.

٢ لاحظ أنه يمكن أن نستخدم (whether + to + inf.) بعد (wonder / want to know) بعد

ex. - "Should I wait for Nada or leave?", Mariam wondered.
= Mariam wondered whether to wait for Nada or leave.

Mini Test 6

• Apply

• ★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- Mai if I had some free time.
a. said b. asked c. wondered d. b & c
- Mai me if I had some free time.
a. said b. asked c. wondered d. b & c
- "Are you busy now?" - Salma if I am busy now.
a. asks b. asked c. says d. said
- "Are you busy now?" - Salma if I was busy then.
a. asks b. asked c. says d. said
- "Will you help me?" - She wondered I would help her.
a. whether b. if c. a & b d. that
- "Do you go out very often?" - Amir wanted to know if out very often.
a. did I go b. I go c. I went d. went I
- She asked me I would go out or stay at home.
a. whether b. if c. that d. a & b

3 Reported Wh-Questions : الأسئلة في الكلام غير المباشر :

١ في الكلام المباشر، يبدأ السؤال بأحد أدوات الاستفهام التالية يليه الفعل المساعد :

what - when - where - why - who - whose - which - how ...

ex. - "Why has she arrived home late ?" asked Ali.

= Ali asked, "Why has she arrived home late ?"

٢ تتكون جملة السؤال بأداة استفهام في الكلام غير المباشر من :

نص الكلام غير المباشر + أداة استفهام + فعل إبلاغ + مَبْلَغ

Ali asked why she had arrived home late.

٣ تستخدم أفعال الإبلاغ بنفس الطريقة التي تم شرحها في (Yes / No questions) :

ex. - Sama asked Abdo when he had got up.

- Sama wondered / wanted to know when Abdo had got up.

٤ يستخدم الفاعل وليس الفعل المساعد بعد (أداة الاستفهام) في الكلام غير المباشر :

ex. - I wondered where she had gone. (Not : where had she)

٥ تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمُخاطَب مثل الجملة الخبرية :

- ex. - Omar asked, "When will you explain the lesson for me, mum ?" (مباشر)
- Omar asked mum when she would explain the lesson for him. (غير مباشر)

٦ تتحول بعض ظروف الزمان والمكان مثل الجملة الخبرية :

- ex. - "Where are you now, Aya ?", asked Ziad. (مباشر)
- Ziad asked Aya where she was then. (غير مباشر)

٧ تتحول الأزمنة مثل الجملة الخبرية :

- ex. - "When are you leaving, Salma ?", asks father. (مباشر)
- Father asked Salma when she was leaving. (غير مباشر)

٨ لا تُستخدم (do - does) كأفعال مساعدة في الكلام غير المباشر ويتحول الفعل الأصلي إلى زمن الماضي البسيط (التصريف الثاني) :

- ex. - "How do you go to school ?" asked Amir. (مباشر)
- Amir asked me how I went to school. (غير مباشر)

٩ لا تُستخدم (did) كفعل مساعد في الكلام غير المباشر ويتحول الفعل الأصلي إلى زمن الماضي التام :

- ex. - "Why didn't you go to school, Tarik ?" I asked. (مباشر)
- I asked Tarik why he hadn't gone to school. (غير مباشر)

١٠ يمكن استخدام أفعال الإبلاغ الخاصة بالجملة الخبرية قبل أداة الاستفهام عند الرد على سؤال وليس في الكلام غير المباشر - لاحظ الفرق :

- ex. - I told Ayman why the meeting was cancelled. (أخبرت أيمن عن سبب إلغاء الاجتماع)
- I asked Ayman why the meeting was cancelled. (سألت أيمن عن سبب إلغاء الاجتماع)

Mini Test 7

• Apply

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I asked he had visited there at the weekend.
a. if b. whether c. what d. where
2. I asked he had gone at the weekend.
a. that b. who c. what d. where
3. Rokaya why I was late.
a. asked b. wanted to know c. said d. a & b
4. Rokaya me why I was late.
a. asked b. wanted to know c. said d. a & b
5. She wants to know what doing.
a. was b. I was c. was I d. b & c

6. "Why do you shout at me?" - Sama wondered why I shouted at
 a. she b. her c. hers d. herself
7. She asked where I the day before.
 a. had gone b. have gone c. am going d. would go
8. She asks where I tomorrow.
 a. had gone b. have gone c. am going d. was going

General Exercise On Language

● Apply

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. He he wouldn't be able to sleep until he had finished the homework. (التبين ٢٠٢٣)
 a. said b. asked c. told d. say
2. Amira her sister that she was going to the library to study. (منطقة أسبوط الأزهرية - أدبي ٢٠٢٣)
 a. told b. said c. asked d. ordered
3. I the shop assistant if the shirt was cheaper, I would take it immediately. (كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)
 a. asked b. told c. advised d. said
4. I didn't know the shop was shut or not. (الرحمانية ٢٠٢٣)
 a. that b. why c. whether d. unless
5. Yara asked the tourist he came from. (إدكو ٢٠٢٣)
 a. when b. that c. where d. if
6. Hazem asked he could leave the lesson early. (منطقة البحيرة الأزهرية - علمي ٢٠٢٣)
 a. that b. whether c. weather d. to
7. The manager asked the secretary the letter the previous week. (كوم حماده ٢٠٢٣)
 a. did you send b. have you sent c. if she had sent d. if she has sent
8. Emad told me that he had bought his car three years (إدفو ٢٠٢٣)
 a. then b. ago c. after d. before
9. Karima told me that she Arabic then. (النوبارية ٢٠٢٣)
 a. studied b. is studying c. was studying d. had studied
10. Essam asked me if to the club the day before. (الرحمانية ٢٠٢٣)
 a. had I gone b. I had gone c. did I go d. I will go
11. I asked him what reading. (التبين ٢٠٢٣)
 a. was he b. is he c. he is d. he was

12. Sama said that she her aunt the following day. (الزيتون ٢٠٢٣)
a. will visit b. would visit c. visited d. visits
13. I Sama what she was doing.
a. wondered b. asked c. said to d. inquired
14. I didn't ask her she would come shopping with us. I forgot doing so.
a. weather b. that c. what d. if
15. I'd like to know he lives.
a. what b. about c. where d. when
16. "We want you to help us, please"
- Mustafa said that they wanted to help them.
a. we b. they c. us d. our
17. Rodayna told Ahmed that new dress was expensive.
a. her b. his c. hers d. mine
18. She explained that she couldn't come because her father was ill
a. by then b. this day c. today d. that day
19. My wife replied that she was preparing lunch
a. at this moment b. then c. now d. by then
20. Ahmed said he would travel abroad the month
a. previous b. following c. after d. before
21. Ayman told his wife that he had visited Aswan
a. yesterday b. the next day c. the day before d. then
22. Omar said that his favourite drink orange juice.
a. was b. was being c. has been d. will be
23. Walid said he me late the night after.
a. phoned b. had phoned c. would phone d. will phone
24. My mother said that she the medicine twice a day.
a. will take b. has taken c. takes d. took
25. Mr Mohammed told me that he to London the day after.
a. had travelled b. travelled c. was travelling d. will travel
26. She said that she go to the club that Friday.
a. couldn't b. doesn't c. won't d. can't

2 Special cases

27. Amr if he had had more-free time, he would have joined a club.
a. asked b. wondered c. said d. advised

(اسمنود ٢٠٢٣)

28. The teacher said that it was time we our lessons successfully. (جرجا ٢٠٢٣)
a. had finished b. was finished c. finish d. finished
29. "It true that I work too hard," she said. (أسوان ٢٠٢٣)
a. to be b. was c. is d. has
30. The teacher suggested that the exercise again. (المرج ٢٠٢٣)
a. we do b. we are doing c. doing d. did we
31. Samy has just said that he his job. (شبراخيت ٢٠٢٣)
a. will leave b. leave c. would leave d. was leaving
32. Seham said that Cairo the capital of Egypt. (سمنود ٢٠٢٣)
a. has been b. had been c. is d. was being
33. Can you tell me where ? (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)
a. is the hospital b. the hospital is
c. has the hospital d. was the hospital
34. She said, "I anyone until I have finished". (أوسيم ٢٠٢٣)
a. didn't see b. won't see c. wouldn't see d. hadn't seen
35. Rodayna Aya was busy making some cakes.
a. said b. asks c. said to d. told
36. My sister that I had broken her tablet.
a. asked b. suggested c. complained d. told
37. She said wanted me to lend her my camera.
a. she b. I c. we d. that
38. "The black car is mine". - He said the black car was
a. his b. him c. mine d. my
39. My friend wonders whether I am travelling
a. the day after b. tomorrow c. then d. ago
40. Amir says he working for a computer repair company at present.
a. had been b. is c. was d. has been
41. He said just now that he a new car next year.
a. had bought b. bought c. is buying d. would buy
42. She says she for a mechanic as her car has broken down.
a. looked b. had looked c. has to look d. had to look
43. "I invite you to my birthday". He tells me he me to his birthday.
a. was inviting b. would invite c. had invited d. invites
44. Our teacher said that the earth around the sun.
a. had gone b. will go c. go d. goes
45. My mother wants to know where at the moment.
a. I am b. I was c. am I d. was I

46. The boys said they a holiday the week after.
 a. were having b. have had c. had d. have
47. "You must study hard this year". - Mum told me that I study hard that year.
 a. must b. would have to c. must have d. have to

3 Check your understanding

48. "It is time you went to bed.", said mum. How do you report this sentence?
 a. Mum said that it was time I went to bed.
 b. Mum said that it was time I had gone to bed.
 c. Mum says that it was time I went to bed.
 d. Mum said that it was time I go to bed.
49. "You'd better depend on yourself." My father said that on myself.
 a. I would better depend b. I had better depended
 c. I had had better depend d. I'd better depend
50. "Can you help me, please ?" Sohaila
 a. said that I could help her. b. asked if could I help her.
 c. asked me to help her. d. asked if I could help her please.
51. "Let's go for a walk." Hana for a walk.
 a. said let's go b. suggested going
 c. said let them go d. wanted me to let them go
52. "If I were you, I'd see another doctor." Omar
 a. said if he were me, he'd seen another doctor.
 b. said if I were you, I would see a doctor.
 c. ordered me to see another doctor.
 d. advised me to see another doctor.
53. "Can I leave now or wait for Ali ?" Abdu for Ali.
 a. asked if he could leave then or waited
 b. wondered whether to leave then or wait
 c. wondered whether to leave now or waited
 d. asked to leave then or waiting
54. "Do you like fish, Sama?" I fish.
 a. asked Sama whether she liked b. asked Sama whether did she like
 c. asked Sama whether to like d. wondered whether did Sama liked



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

attention (n)	اهتمام - انتباه	hard-working(adj)	جاد في العمل
caring(adj)	مهتم - مُراعي	honest(adj)	صادق - أمين
communicator(n)	نَاق - مُفوّه	loyal(adj)	مُخلص
compassion(n)	رأفة - رحمة	punctual(adj)	مُنضبط - مُلتزم
compassionate(adj)	رحيم	reliable(adj)	موثوق به - يُعتمد عليه
confident(adj)	واثق - مُتفكّن	team player(n)	شخص يجيد العمل الجماعي
flexible(adj)	مرن		

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

adapt(ed) to (phr. v)	يتكيف مع	office worker(n)	موظف إداري
aged(adj)	بالغ من العمر	opportunity(n)	فرصة
availability(n)	جاهزية - إتاحة	patient(adj - n)	صَبُور - مريض
certificate(n)	شهادة	pay (n - v)	الراتب - يدفع مال
community(n)	المجتمع	personal	نبذة شخصية
cuisine(n)	أسلوب الطهي	statement(n)	سُتات
CV = Curriculum Vitae(n)	السيرة الذاتية	plumber(n)	سبّاح
experience(n)	الخبرة - تجربة حياتية	Post Graduates(n)	الدراسات العليا
fair(n)	مُندي - سوق - مَعرَض	professional (n - adj)	مُحترف
fancy(ied) (v)	يتخيّل	require(d) (v)	يُطلب - يستلزم
fire engines(n)	سيارات الإطفاء	shop assistant(n)	بائع / بائعة
global warming(n)	الاحتباس الحراري	siren(n)	بوق - صافرة إنذار
immediate(adj)	فوري	situation(n)	موقف
interests(n)	اهتمامات	support(ed) (n - v)	دعم - يدعم
legal(adj)	قانوني / شرعي	teammates(n)	زملاء الفريق
necessary(adj)	ضروري	variety(n)	تنوع
		vet = veterinarian(n)	طبيب بيطري

3 Definitions التعريفات

Memorise	Understand
attention(n) اهتمام - انتباه	the act of listening to, looking at or thinking about something/somebody carefully
caring(adj) مُفَنِّم - مُرَاعِي	describes someone who offers help and support
communicator(n) لَبِق - مُفَوِّه	someone who can explain their ideas
confident(adj) واثق - مُتَمَكِّن	describes someone who thinks that they can do things well
flexible(adj) مَرِن	describes someone who can change their behaviour in different situations
hard-working(adj) جاد في العمل	working with a lot of effort
honest(adj) صادق - أمين	always telling the truth
loyal(adj) مُخْلِص	describes someone who supports their friends even when it's difficult
punctual(adj) مُنْضِيط - مُلتَزِم	arriving, happening, or being done at exactly the time that was arranged
reliable(adj) موثوق به - يُعْتَقَد عليه	always doing what they say they will do
team player(n) شخص يجيد العمل الجماعي - شخص مُتعاون	a person who works well with others

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- To work in customer service, you need to be a good (حلوان ٢٠٢٣)
a. communicator b. translator c. professor d. chemist
- A person who supports their friends even when it's difficult is
a. loyal b. confident c. flexible d. honest
(التبين ٢٠٢٣)
- These shoes are comfortable because their leather is (منوف ٢٠٢٣)
a. visible b. terrible c. flexible d. eatable

4. She is a student. (التعبير ٢٠٢٣)
 a. work hard b. hard work c. hard-working d. works hard
5. Everyone in the company trusts him because he is (مفاعة ٢٠٢٣)
 a. frightening b. punctuation c. punctual d. frightened
6. We like this website as we get information from it. (النوابة ٢٠٢٣)
 a. reliable b. unreliable c. miserable d. terrible
7. It is not to tell your friends' secrets to others.
 a. successful b. honest c. terrible d. aged
8. When your teacher talks, you must pay
 a. reward b. industry c. construction d. attention
9. He is not worried. He looks
 a. caring b. flexible c. confident d. annoyed
10. Mr Nasser is really a/an teacher. He makes sure all his students understand.
 a. stressed b. rewarding c. caring d. individual
11. To help a group do better, every member must be a/an
 a. individual b. frustrated c. team player d. immediate
12. The manager was and agreed to change the date of the meeting.
 a. stressful b. qualified c. rewarding d. flexible
13. Women naturally have more for children.
 a. community b. compassion c. degree d. experience

2 Important Vocabulary

14. It's important for us to be able to to different situations. (إبتاء البارود ٢٠٢٣)
 a. adopt b. adapt c. adept d. odd
15. All celebrities suffer to keep their lives unpopular. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)
 a. public b. personal c. personnel d. nearby
16. I called a to fix the kitchen tap.
 a. scientist b. plumber c. baker d. farmer
17. In a CV, an applicant has to write a personal
 a. statement b. graduate c. product d. ward
18. I'm going to apply for graduate studies next month.
 a. mast b. most c. past d. post
19. When drivers hear the of an ambulance, they must make way for it.
 a. siren b. statement c. community d. cuisine
20. The time of the journey depends on the of train tickets.
 a. opportunity b. availability c. qualification d. apprenticeship

21. It is not to drive on the left.
 a. successful b. honest c. legal d. aged
22. Try to be a good member of your
 a. siren b. statement c. community d. cuisine
23. I got my preparatory school last year.
 a. certificate b. deadline c. graduate d. teammate
24. He found a good to work as a cashier in a supermarket.
 a. opportunity b. availability c. qualification d. apprenticeship
25. I have a little son five.
 a. successful b. honest c. legal d. aged

3 Definitions

26. The man who is able to talk about his ideas and emotions in a way that others understand is called
 (جربا ٢٠٢٣)
 a. communicator b. honest c. confident d. flexible
27. people can change their minds to suit new circumstances.
 (شبراخيت ٢٠٢٣)
 a. Flexible b. Feasible c. Readable d. Stressful
28. means arriving, happening, or being done at exactly the time that was arranged.
 a. Punctual b. Reliable c. Successful d. Rewarding
29. A/An is a person who works well with others in a group.
 a. causality b. communicator
 c. team player d. attention
30. means always doing what they say they will do.
 a. Punctual b. Reliable c. Successful d. Rewarding
31. To be means always telling the truth.
 a. flexible b. hard-working c. honest d. loyal
32. describes someone who offers help and support.
 a. Caring b. Tiring c. Particular d. Incredible
33. The adjective describes someone who thinks that they can do things well.
 a. interested b. confident c. local d. suitable
34. is the act of listening to, looking at or thinking about something/somebody carefully.
 a. Causality b. Communicator
 c. Team player d. Attention

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations المتلازمات اللفظية

do	things well	يقوم بالأشياء جيداً	have	variety	متنوع
earn/make	much money	يجني مالاً كثيراً	offer	help and support	يُقدم المساعدة والدعم
get	work experience	يكتسب خبرة عملية	take	a course	يأخذ دورة تدريبية
give/pay	attention	ينتبه	tell	the truth	يقول الصدق

2 Synonyms المترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
caring	مُهِتَم - مُرَاعِي
confident	واثق - مُتَمَكِّن
essential	ضروري - هام
flexible	مَرِن
hard-working	جاد في العمل
honest	أمين - مخلص
reliable	موثوق به - يُعْتَمَد عليه
	concerned, attentive, loving, considerate, affectionate
	self-assured, sure
	necessary, important
	adaptable, adjustable
	industrious, enthusiastic
	sincere, loyal
	dependable, trustworthy, trustful

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
caring	مُهِتَم - مُرَاعِي
essential	ضروري - هام
flexible	مَرِن
hard-working	جاد في العمل
honest	صادق - أمين
loyal	مُخْلِص
punctual	مُنْضَبِط - مُتَلَزِم
reliable	يُعْتَمَد عليه
	uncaring, cruel
	unnecessary, unimportant, trivial
	inflexible - rigid
	lazy
	dishonest, insincere
	disloyal, treacherous
	late, tardy
	unreliable, untrustworthy
	غير مُكْتَرِث - قاسي
	غير ضروري - غير هام
	غير مَرِن
	كسول
	غير أمين / كاذب
	خائن
	متأخر
	لا يُعْتَمَد عليه

4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a natural thing to do	من الطبيعي القيام بهذا الشيء	plenty of	الكثير من
attention to details	الاهتمام بالتفاصيل	Post Graduate Certificate	شهادة الدراسات العليا

Bachelor Degree in Science شهادة البكالوريوس في العلوم	sitting at a desk المجالس على مكتب
dream job وظيفة الأحلام	skills required المهارات المطلوبة
Egyptian cuisine المطبخ المصري	suitable for مناسب لـ
free-time activities أنشطة وقت الفراغ	want a job helping people يريد عملاً يساعد الناس
interested in مهتم بـ	with their sirens sounding وهي تطلق صافراتها التحذيرية
on a training course ضمن مقرر تدريبي	work experience خبرة عملية
personal qualities سمات شخصية	years of study سنوات الدراسة

5 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

adapt to+ n/ (inf.+ing) يتكيف مع	work in يعمل في
find out about يكتشف / يعرف عن	work on يعمل على (تحسين/ تطوير)
help ... with يساعد ... في	work with يعمل في / علي
work as يعمل كـ	

6 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

punctual - puncture

- **punctual (adj)** مُنضبط - مُلتزم
- Being punctual makes him successful in his job.
- **puncture (n)** ثقب
- The tyre الإطار is flat فارغ because there's a puncture in it.

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

• **MRQ :** Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. "Someone who always does what they say they will do is reliable."
The word "reliable" can be replaced by (قليوب ٢٠٢٣)
a. trustworthy b. dishonest c. dependable
d. communicator e. loyal
2. This is a/an plan. There is always a possibility to change it according to the situation. (العجمي ٢٠٢٣)
a. flexible b. inflexible c. adaptable
d. fixed e. unchangeable
3. The synonyms of the word "honest" are (شبين القناطر ٢٠٢٣)
a. sincere b. loyal c. cruel
d. savage e. traitor

4. This shop a variety of smartphones.
a. tells b. does c. has
d. goes e. sells
5. It is not a crime trying to much money through hard work.
a. give b. meet c. tell
d. earn e. make
6. "He is punctual. He is always on time." The word 'punctual' cannot be replaced by
a. late b. tardy c. in time
d. early e. on time
7. "He is a caring friend." The adjective 'caring' here means
a. cruel b. inconsiderate c. concerned
d. unconcerned e. loving

★ MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. It was necessary for Aya to study her lessons. The synonym of the word "necessary" is
(الرحمانية ٢٠٢٣) a. allowed b. inessential c. essential d. banned
2. Fresh fruits are good your health.
(بولاق ٢٠٢٣) a. at b. for c. about d. to
3. You are supposed to be the truth, not lies.
a. doing b. meeting c. telling d. earning
4. You all should attention to what he says.
a. give b. meet c. tell d. earn
5. He has a language course.
a. taken b. met c. earned d. a & b
6. He has much experience over the years.
a. met b. got c. offered d. done
7. "She is a parent." Complete with the antonym of 'cruel'.
a. confident b. loving c. lazy d. strict
8. "You can depend on her." This means she is not
a. dependable b. trustworthy c. unreliable d. reliable
9. Taking a rest after hard work is a natural thing
a. do b. doing c. to do d. to doing
10. The ambulances were rushing through the street with their sirens
a. sound b. sounds c. sounded d. sounding
11. Now, scientists are working a better medicine for this disease.
a. for b. with c. on d. inside

(CV)⁽¹⁾**Name:** Nabila El-Soory**Age:** 24**Address:** Central Cairo, Egypt**Dream job:** Teacher**Qualifications:**

- **Post Graduate**⁽²⁾ **Certificate**⁽³⁾ in Education: Bradly College, Oxford, England
- Bachelors Degree in English: Cairo University, Cairo, Egypt

I am :

- punctual - reliable
- a good communicator - caring

Experience:

I've always wanted a job helping people. I watched many lessons on my training course, and I taught English to young people **aged**⁽⁴⁾ 7-16 years old in the **UK**⁽⁵⁾.

Personal statement⁽⁶⁾ :

I am punctual and reliable. I can communicate well with young people, and I believe that I am a patient and caring professional.

Interests : Reading, **theatre**⁽⁷⁾, and Egyptian **cuisine**⁽⁸⁾**Availability**⁽⁹⁾ : **Immediate**⁽¹⁰⁾

- (1) السيرة الذاتية
- (2) الدراسات العليا
- (3) شهادة
- (4) بالغ من العمر
- (5) المملكة المتحدة
- (6) نبذة شخصية
- (7) المسرح
- (8) أسلوب الطهي
- (9) تواجد - إتاحة
- (10) فوري

PART IV LANGUAGE**1 استخدام الأرقام في الصفات المركبة : Compound adjectives with numbers**

1 تُستخدم الأرقام في صفة مُركبة من ثلاث كلمات بينهم (-) كالتالي:

→ صفة + اسم مفرد + رقم

ex. - Ahmed is a twelve - year - old child.

2 تُستخدم الأرقام في صفة مُركبة من كلمتين بينهم (-) كالتالي:

→ اسم مفرد + رقم

ex. - We went on a three - day holiday.

٢ يمكن ان يكون الاسم فى الصفة المركبة جمع ينتهى بـ (s') :

اسم جمع + رقم
↓ ↓

ex. - My office is two hours' drive from here.

٤ فى حالة وجود كلمة time بعد الكلمات السابقة نستخدم (s') فى حالة المفرد و (s') فى حالة الجمع:

ex. - I'll call you in an hour's time.

- In two years' time, I will have finished this course.

2 but - however - although - despite :

١ الروابط التالية يأتى بعدها جملة وتأتى فى الوسط فقط:

١ جملة + مع ذلك however - لكن but

ex. - We had got up early, but / however we missed the bus.

٢ الروابط التالية يأتى بعدها جملة وتأتى فى البداية أو الوسط :

٢ جملة + برغم أن though - برغم أن Although

ex. - Although we had got up early, we missed the bus.

- We missed the bus although we had got up early.

٣ الروابط التالية يأتى بعدها اسم / (inf. + ing) وتأتى فى البداية أو الوسط :

٣ Despite / In spite of + برغم أن (inf. + ing) / noun

ex. - Despite getting up early, we missed the bus.

- We missed the bus despite getting up early.

3 not only ... but also : ليس فقط ... ولكن أيضاً :

١ تاتى not only قبل الفعل الاساسي أو بعد الفعل المساعد فى الجملة الأولى.

.... (as well) (also) فعل مساعد / ناقص + الفاعل + but + .. فعل + not only + فاعل -

ex. - We were not only playing chess, but we were also drinking coffee.

٢ عند استخدام (Not only) فى بداية الجملة يستخدم فعل مساعد قبل الفاعل:

Not Only + فاعل + فعل + فعل مساعد + but also

ex. - Not only were we playing chess, but we were also drinking coffee.

٣ إذا ربطت (Not only...but also ...) فاعلين مختلفين فان الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثانى:

ex. - Not only Tom but also his brothers are doctors.

General Exercise On Language

● Apply

● ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He was punished coming early. (كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)
a. although b. but c. despite d. however
2. We will go to play tennis the cold weather. (كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)
a. if b. although c. but d. in spite of
3. She has daughter. (كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)
a. five years b. five-year-old
c. a five-years-old d. a five-year-old
4. the long hours and hard work, the job is very rewarding.
a. Despite b. However c. In spite d. Although (القاهرة الجديدة ٢٠٢٣)
5. the high waves, I completed the swimming race. (إدفو ٢٠٢٣)
a. Although b. Despite c. But d. And
6. He says he likes sports., he only watches them on TV.
a. Despite b. Although c. As d. However
7. my help, he fell into debt.
a. However b. Although c. Despite d. As
8. I like reading novels, I don't have time.
a. but b. if c. because d. although
9. She speaks English French.
a. as b. as well c. well d. and
10. This gentleman wants to make reservation at the hotel.
a. three nights b. three-nights c. a three-night d. a three-nights
11. She walked home by herself she knew it was dangerous.
a. because b. because of c. although d. despite
12. his cleverness, he was unable to answer the question.
a. In spite of b. Although c. Even though d. However
13. We decided to go out for a meal it was raining.
a. however b. even though c. despite d. in spite of
14. Not only my brothers but also my sister going to Alexandria.
a. are b. is c. were d. have been
15. He came late he got in.
a. although b. but c. despite d. whatever
16. Hossam enjoyed the party, he had to leave early.
a. because b. owing to c. however d. so that



PART I

GRAMMATICAL HINTS

١ كلمة (attendant) تُستخدم بمعنى (خادم - مُرافق - مضيف) وهي تشير إلى شخص يقوم بمساعدة أو خدمة الحاضرين في مكان ما :

- ex. - She works as a flight attendant.
- They had an attendant for their old mother for six hours a day.

٢ كلمة (communicator) تعني (شخص لبق أو مُتكلّم) وهي تشير إلى شخص يستطيع التعبير عن أفكاره ومشاعره بشكل جذاب :

- ex. - A teacher must be a good communicator.

٣ المقصود بـ (team player) شخص مُتعاون يتمتع بروح الجماعة :

- ex. - This company is successful because it has a staff of team players.

٤ أحد استخدامات كلمة (even) هو التعبير عن الاندهاش من شيء ما لأنه مُفاجئ أو غير مألوف أو غير متوقع :

- ex. - We don't even know why she is crying.
- We all missed the bus even Nasser who is never late.
- It's not an easy job, it might even take a month to finish it.

٥ لاحظ أن (adapt to) بمعنى (يتكيف مع) يأتي بعدها اسم (noun) أو (inf. + ing) :

- ex. - She adapted to working in a foreign country.
- I hope you will adapt to life in Japan.

٦ هناك بعض الظروف التي يمكن أن تُستخدم لتغيير معني الجملة بالكامل، و غالبا تستخدم في بداية الجملة مثل :

من strangely - من الواضح obviously - لحسن الحظ fortunately / luckily
..... من المُدهش surprisingly - من المثير للاهتمام interestingly - الغريب

- ex. - Obviously, she accepted the offer.

Exercise On Language Hints

⊛ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- I am in a bad need of a/an to look after my grandfather who can't walk.
a. attendance b. attendant c. communicator d. team player
- The new team members have adapted with the older ones.
a. working b. do work c. work d. to working

3. Let Ayman speak for us. He is a good
a. attendance b. attendant c. communicator d. punctuality
4. She works hard., she was fired.
a. Strangely b. Strange c. Lucky d. Luckily

PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

1 Reading

❖ Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (سؤال ٢٣ - ٢٠)

Some people think that shop assistants just help people to choose what to buy, but the job can be more interesting than that.

Adam Osman works for a fashion store and he loves his job. His job includes advising customers and taking payments, as well as **creating displays**. Adam says that a good shop assistant enjoys communicating with people.

You spend all day talking to people, so you need to be confident, friendly and able to make people feel comfortable. You also have to be honest. Nobody wants to hear that they look terrible in a piece of clothing, but they like it when you can suggest something else which looks better on them. A benefit of this job is being able to buy some items in your shop for less money.

If you are thinking of a career working in shops, there are usually management training programmes and other extra courses available for staff, such as language skills if you work in a tourist area.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. According to the text, shop assistants
a. have a simple job b. are interesting people
c. help people make choices d. earn little money
2. Shop assistants should be
a. shy b. truthful c. dishonest d. talkative
3. What is a benefit of working as a shop assistant?
a. You can study to become a manager.
b. You can have a lot of free clothes.
c. You can work alone.
d. You can buy some low-priced items.
4. Customers are people who go
a. shopping b. swimming c. fishing d. running

5. The underlined phrase “**creating displays**” means
 a. performing plays in the theatre
 b. presenting programme on TV
 c. arranging goods in the shop window
 d. behaving well with customers
6. Which word of the following doesn't mean “a shop assistant”?
 a. salesman b. servant c. seller d. shopkeeper
7. Adam Osman works at a
 a. clothes shop b. clinic c. factory d. fire bridge

2 Email Writing كتابة البريد الإلكتروني

* Ideas for writing a job description

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 What is this job? | ما هذه الوظيفة؟ |
| 2 What do you do? | ما الذي تقوم به في هذه الوظيفة؟ |
| 3 Where do you work? | أين تعمل؟ |
| 4 How many hours do you work a week? | كم عدد الساعات التي تعملها كل أسبوع؟ |
| 5 What is special about this job? | ماذا يميز هذه الوظيفة؟ |
| 6 How much holiday do you have? | كم مدة الإجازة؟ |
| 7 What do you like about the job? | ما الذي يعجبك في هذه الوظيفة؟ |

3 Translation الترجمة

1. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. It is believed that unemployment is the main cause of serious problems among the youth; it results in addiction and committing crimes. (سمنود ٢٠٢٣)

- a. يُعتَقَد أن الأمية تؤدي إلى مشاكل خطيرة بين الشباب، حيث تؤدي إلى الانحراف وارتكاب الجرائم.
 b. يُعتَقَد أن الأمية تؤدي إلى مشاكل خطيرة بين الشباب، فهي تدفعهم إلى الانحراف وارتكاب الجرائم.
 c. من المُعتَقَد أن البطالة هي السبب الرئيسي لمشاكل الشباب، حيث تؤدي إلى الإدمان وارتكاب الجرائم.
 d. من المُعتَقَد أن البطالة هي السبب الرئيسي لمشكلات خطيرة بين الشباب، حيث تؤدي إلى الإدمان وارتكاب الجرائم.

2. Concentration and hard work are the most important factors for success, without them, it would be impossible to achieve goals. (ببلا ٢٠٢٣)

- a. التركيز والعمل الجاد أهم مصانع النجاح، وبدونهما سيكون من المُحال تحقيق الأهداف.
 b. يُعَد التركيز والعمل الجاد أهم عوامل النجاح، وبدونهما سيكون من المستحيل تحقيق الأهداف.
 c. يُعَد التركيز والعمل الصعب أهم أرقام النجاح، وبدونهما سيكون ممكناً تحقيق الأهداف.
 d. يُعَد التركيز والعمل الجاد أهم عمال النجاح، وبدونهما سيكون من المستحيل تحقيق الأهداف.

● 2. Choose the correct English translation from a , b , c or d :

١. نعيش الآن في مجتمع يعمل فيه الرجل والمرأة جنباً إلى جنب في كل المجالات كما أنهما يتساويان في الحقوق والواجبات تجاه الأسرة والمجتمع.
(السنة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. We now live in a society where men and women work side by side. They are equal in their rights and duties towards the family and society.
- b. We now live in a society where men and women work side by side in all fields. They are also equal in their rights and duties towards the family and society.
- c. We now live in a society where men and women work side by side. They are not equal in their rights and duties towards the family and society.
- d. We now live in a society where men and women work side by side. They are equal in their rights and tasks towards the family and society.

٢. يسافر الناس إلى الخارج لأسباب كثيرة منها العمل أو الدراسة، كما أن ذلك وسيلة لتوسيع آفاقنا ويساعدنا على فهم الثقافات الأخرى.
(شمال الجيزة ٢٠٢٣)

- a. People travel abroad for many results, including work or study. It is also a way to broaden our horizons and help us understand other cultures.
- b. People travel aboard for many reasons, including work or study. It is also a way to broaden our horizons and help us understand other heritages.
- c. People travel abroad for many reasons, including work or study. It is also a way to broaden our horizons and help us understand other cultures.
- d. People travel abroad for many reasons, including work or study. It is also a way to broaden our horizons and help us misunderstand other cultures.

apply

• apply (v)

يتقدم بطلب (التحاق / انضمام)

- He wants to apply for another job.

لاحظ أن:

• apply for

يتقدم بطلب (يأتي بعدها اسم الشيء الذي نتقدم للحصول عليه)

- I applied for the membership of the club.

• apply to

يتقدم بطلب (يأتي بعدها اسم الشخص أو الجهة الذي نتقدم إليه)

- I'll apply to the manager soon.

• apply in writing

يتقدم كتابة لطلب وظيفة

- You can send your CV online. You don't have to apply in writing.

• apply (to) (v)

يُطبَّق على - ينسري على

- The offer applies to all customers.

• applied (adj)

تطبيقي - عملي

- We study applied maths at school.

• applicable to (adj)

ساري على - ينطبق على

- The discount is only applicable to children's clothes.

• applicant (n)

مُتقدم بطلب (لوظيفة / جامعة / نادي ...)

- There are more than fifty applicants for the job.

• application (n)

طلب انضمام

- The manager has examined all the applications.

• application (n)

تطبيق

- Mobile applications are free on this website.

apprenticeship

• apprentice (n)

مُتدَرِّب - شخص تحت التمرين

- My brother is an apprentice surgeon.
- The mechanic asked one of the apprentices to bring him some tools.

• apprentice (d) (to) (v)

يتدرب عملياً (تحت إشراف ...)

- My cousin wants to apprentice to an electrician to learn from him.

• apprenticeship (n)

التدريب المهني

- After a two-year apprenticeship, I was good enough to have my own garage.

industry

الصناعة

• industry (n)

- Thousands of people work in the car industry.

• industry (n)

نشاط اقتصادي - صناعة (بمعني مجال)

- The tourist industry is very important for Egypt.

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية:

- manufacturing industry مجال التصنيع
- service industry المجال الخدمي
- heavy industry الصناعات الثقيلة
- film industry صناعة السينما

• industrial (adj)

صناعي (خاص بالصناعة)

- There is much pollution in industrial areas.

• industrious (adj)

جاد في العمل - مثابر

- He is an industrious person that you can depend on.

qualify

• qualify (ied) (v)

يحصل علي مؤهل - يتأهل

- I qualified as a teacher in 1998.

لاحظ أن:

• qualify as

يتأهل كـ (يأتي بعدها الوظيفة)

- He qualified as a teacher two years ago.

• qualify in

يحصل على مؤهل في (تخصص معين)

- He qualified in biology last year.

• be qualified to + inf.

يكون مؤهل لكي

- She is qualified to teach science.

• qualify (v)

يؤهل - يجعل ... مؤهل لـ

- This course qualifies you to work as a lawyer.

• qualify (v)

يتأهل لدور أعلي في المسابقات

- Liverpool qualified for the semi-final.

• qualified (adj) غير مؤهل

unqualified (adj) مؤهل - لديه مؤهلات - متأهل

- Employers prefer qualified applicants to unqualified ones.

• qualification (v)

مؤهل - تأهل

- He has the right qualifications for the job.
- People celebrated the qualification of the national team for the World Cup.

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية:

- have qualifications لديه المؤهلات
- lack qualifications لنقصه المؤهلات

reliable

• rely (ied) on / upon (v)

يعتمد على

- Babies rely on their mothers.

• reliable (adj)

يُعتَمَد عليه / أهل للثقة

- You can depend on Omar. He is a reliable man.

• reliability (n)

الدقة

- Scientific information is of high reliability.

• reliance (n)

الاعتماد / الاتكال

- His reliance on his parents makes him lazy.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

مُجَاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The Great Pyramid is an enormous
a. application b. construction c. department d. compassion
2. is to hard-working as stressful is to worrying.
a. Industrial b. Flexible c. Rewarding d. Industrious
3. If you don't the deadline, your application won't be accepted.
a. do b. earn c. meet d. offer
4. The discount الخصم does not to you because you are not a member of the club.
a. adapt b. attend c. apply d. frustrate
5. on others will never make you successful.
a. Confident b. Confidence c. Reliability d. Reliance

Advanced Exercise on Language

مُجَاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Sama wondered to wait for the bus or take a taxi.
a. that b. if c. whether d. what
2. Ashraf said that he'd rather I his mobile.
a. hadn't used b. didn't use c. haven't used d. won't use
3. She said that she'd rather Amr at home the day before.
a. stayed b. had stayed c. staying d. has stayed
4. Not only up late, but he also forgot his books.
a. he turned b. did he turn c. turned he d. turned
5. My father said that it was time we home.
a. had returned b. hadn't returned c. returned d. didn't return

Test on Unit 10

• Understand • Apply • Create

لنويه

التقييمات
الشهرية في
نهاية الكتاب



اختبار الكتروني

1. Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. "This book is too theoretical." The antonyms of "theoretical" are

(قويسنا ٢٠٢٣)

- a. affected b. practical c. ethical
d. directed e. applicable

2. Very high prices are very for me.

(دمياط ٢٠٢٣)

- a. beneficial b. annoying c. stressed
d. stressful e. supportive

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. Magdi is in the second year of his as a mechanic.

- a. decision b. improvement c. condition d. apprenticeship

2. The emergency room in a hospital is called department.

- a. casual b. causable c. community d. casualty

(الرحمانية ٢٠٢٣)

3. My sister has a in medicine.

(الاسماعيلية ٢٠٢٣)

- a. degree b. licence c. mark d. sign

4. What do you need to be a successful scientist?

(أسوان ٢٠٢٣)

- a. qualifications b. applications c. rewards d. stresses

5. As soon as I qualify from university, I will do post-..... studies.

- a. knowledge b. deadline c. graduate d. teammate

6. You should always your dreams. Never stop trying.

- a. pursue b. cycle c. challenge d. involve

7. The time of the journey depends on the of train tickets.

- a. opportunity b. availability c. qualification d. apprenticeship

8. Mona asked me from the shop the following day.

(حلوان ٢٠٢٣)

- a. what had I bought b. what I would buy
c. would I buy d. what I had bought

9. She wanted to know if they would meet us in Alex the Friday.

- a. previous b. following c. before d. after

(غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)

10. Sherif his dad to give him a lift to school because he was late.

- a. questioned b. said c. wondered d. asked

(غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)

11. My father promised me that he me a mobile the following week.

- a. will buy b. would buy c. bought d. had bought

(شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)

12. She asked her father why late the night before.

(شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)

- a. did he come b. he had come c. he has come d. had he come

13. The officer asked me I had a driving license or not. (رشيد ٢٠٢٣)
 a. whether b. weather c. while d. that
14. the high waves, I completed the swimming race. (ادفو ٢٠٢٣)
 a. Although b. Despite c. But d. And

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (دمهور ٢٠٢٣)

Jealousy الغيرة and envy الحسد are often used interchangeably, but they have different meanings and characteristics. Where jealousy involves the fear that a third party will disrupt a relationship, envy involves the desire to have what someone else possesses. You are jealous when you fear someone will take what you have. It leads to anger and resentment. You are envious when you feel that someone has something you want. Jealousy is a normal human emotion, but abnormal jealousy can put you or others in danger. If you're experiencing morbid jealousy, in which your thoughts, emotions, behaviours are irrational, extreme, or obsessive, you may need treatment. Psychotherapy can be helpful for changing the thoughts that contribute to feelings of jealousy. Two types of therapy that can be particularly effective include: Cognitive-behavioural therapy (CBT) which focuses on identifying the negative thoughts that lead to jealousy. Cognitive-analytic therapy (CAT) which focuses on relationship patterns and how people relate to others. Specific techniques that can be helpful include cognitive restructuring and cognitive reframing. Both involve changing how you view situations and relationships. Reframing is a technique you can use on your own, but restructuring is a more formal and structured approach that is directed by a trained therapist.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. The best title for this passage is ".....".
 a. Behaviour b. Jealousy
 c. Romantic relationship d. Approach
2. You need treatment when your jealousy is
 a. abnormal b. normal c. secure d. slight
3. is a more formal and structured approach.
 a. Restructuring b. Reframing c. a & b d. Destruction
4. On feeling that someone has something you want, you are
 a. envious b. jealous c. self-satisfied d. wise
5. Jealousy is a normal human
 a. motion b. pattern c. emotion d. relation
6. Morbid jealousy is a/an illness.
 a. physical b. mental c. psychological d. infectious
7. With a reframing technique, you a therapist.
 a. don't need b. need c. approach d. include

4. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

Without motivation in life, it's hard to strive for success and achieve happiness. You should try to achieve more success for yourself first before trying to please other people.

(دمياط ٢٠٢٣)

- a. بدون التحفيز في الحياة، من اليسير السعي لإدراك النجاح وتحقيق السعادة، ويجب أن تحاول تحقيق المزيد من النجاح لنفسك أولاً قبل محاولة إرضاء الآخرين.
- b. بدون التحفيز في الحياة، من الصعب السعي لإدراك النجاح وتحقيق السعادة، ويجب أن تحاول تحقيق المزيد من النجاح لنفسك أولاً قبل محاولة إرضاء الآخرين.
- c. بدون التحفيز في الحياة، من الصعب السعي لإدراك النجاح وتحقيق السعادة، ويجب أن تحاول تحقيق المزيد من النجاح لنفسك أولاً بعد محاولة إرضاء الآخرين.
- d. بدون الحافز في الحياة، من الصعب السعي لإدراك النجاح وتحقيق السعادة، ويجب أن تحاول تحقيق بعض النجاح لنفسك أولاً قبل محاولة إرضاء الآخرين.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

التنمية المستدامة هي استراتيجية تهدف إلى تحقيق أهداف التنمية البشرية مع الحفاظ في الوقت نفسه على الموارد الطبيعية التي يعتمد عليها الاقتصاد والمجتمع.
(كفر الزيات ٢٠٢٣)

- a. Sustainable development is a strategy that aims to achieve humane development goals while simultaneously preserving the natural sources that the economy and society rely on.
- b. Social development is a strategy that aims to achieve human development goals while simultaneously preserving the natural resources that the country and society rely on.
- c. Sustainable development is a strategy that aims to achieve human development goals while simultaneously preserving the natural resources that the economy and society rely on.
- d. Sustainable development is a strategy that needs to achieve human development plans while simultaneously preserving the natural resources that the economy and society rely on.

5. Answer the following questions:

1. Silver tried to mislead Jim concerning his friends. Explain how.

2. To what extent was Jim successful in his adventure on the Hispaniola?

3. Would you prefer to have Silver as an enemy or a friend? Why?

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:

"A job you would like to have in the future"



UNIT 11

Amazing people

SB pages 52 : 61 WB pages 114 : 119

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

- ◉ **Reading :** An article about athletes with disabilities
- ◉ **Writing :** A paragraph on a disabled person you like; an email to arrange a job interview
- ◉ **Listening :** A radio interview about equal opportunities

- ◉ **Speaking :** Making complaints and polite responses
- ◉ **Language :** Relative clauses
- ◉ **Life Skills :** Respect for diversity; creativity; cooperation



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

achieve(d) (v)	يُنْجِز - يُحَقِّق	highs and lows(n)	أفراح وأتراح
achievement(n)	إنجاز	kung fu(n)	الكونغ فو
activist(n)	ناشط	medal(n)	ميدالية
campaign (n)	حملة	muscle(n)	عضلة
campaign(ed) (v)	يطالب بـ / يناصر - يَحْثِد	polio(n)	شلل الأطفال
campaigner (n)	مدافع/ مؤيد/ ناشط	powerlifter(n)	لاعب رياضة القوة البدنية
compete(d) (v)	يُنَافِس / يتسابق	powerlifting(n)	رياضة القوة البدنية
disability(n)	إعاقة / عَجْز	put pressure on	يمارس ضغطاً على
disabled(adj)	مُعاق	ramp(n)	مُنْخَر - مطلع للكراسي
high and low(adv)	في كل مكان	wheelchair(n)	المتحركة كراسي متحرك

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

actually(adv)	فعلاً / في الواقع	medical(adj)	طبي
affect(ed) (v)	يؤثر على	metal disc(n)	قرص معدني
amazing(adj)	مذهل	Olympian(n)	لاعب أولمبي
athlete(n)	لاعب ألعاب القوى - رياضي	Olympics = Olympic Games(n)	الألعاب الأولمبية
athletics(n)	ألعاب القوى	Olympic(adj)	أولمبي
awful(adj)	فظيع	organisation (n)	مُنْظَمة
benefit (n)	فائدة	outstanding(adj)	بارز/ هام
campus(n)	الحرم الجامعي	paperwork(n)	عمل ورقي
celebrity(n)	شخص مشهور	Paralympian(n)	لاعب أولمبي من ذوي الهمم
champion(n)	بطل رياضي	Paralympic(adj)	خاص بأولمبياد ذوي الهمم
chance(n)	فرصة	Paralympics(n)	أولمبياد ذوي الهمم
condition(n)	حالة / وضع	passenger(n)	مسافر / أحد الركاب
cycling(n)	ركوب الدراجات	physical(adj)	بدني
dedicate(d) (v)	يكرّس/ يخصص	podcast (n)	مُدونة صوتية
determination(n)	إصرار - تصميم		
ensure(d) (v)	يؤكد - يضمن		

event(n)	خَدَث - مناسبة	preserve(d) (v)	يصون - يحافظ علي
existing(adj)	موجود	promote(d) (v)	يُرَوِّج ل - يَرْقِّي
guess(ed) (v)	يُخَمِّن	race(n)	سباق
guest(n)	ضيف	racer(n)	متسابق
impact(n)	أثر - انطباع	require(d) (v)	يتطلب - يستلزم
inspire(d) (v)	يُلْهِم - يُحَفِّز	retire(d) (v)	يعتزل - يتقاعد
issue(n)	قضية	sacrifice(d) (n - v)	تضحية - يُضْحِي بـ
lift(ed) (v)	يرفع	snowboarding(n)	تَزَلُّج - تزلج على الجليد
lift(n)	مضعد (أسانسير)	sociology (n)	علم الاجتماع
marketing(n)	التسويق	spina bifida(n)	تشقق العمود الفقري
media(n)	وسائل الإعلام		

3 Definitions التعريفات

Memorise	Understand
achieve(d)(v) يُنْجِز - يُخَفِّق	to be successful in doing something good
achievement(n) إنجاز	something good that you have successfully done
activist(n) ناشط	someone who tries to change things
campaign(v) يُنَاصِر - يُؤَيِّد	to work in an organised way to change things
compete(d) (v) يُنَافِس - يتسابق	to take part in a race or a competition
disability(n) إعاقة - عَجَز	a physical difference that makes it difficult for someone to do something
disabled(adj) مُعاق	a way to describe someone who cannot use part of their body in the way that most people can
highs and lows أفراح وأتراح	successful and unsuccessful times
medal(n) ميدالية	a metal disc that you can win when you do or play a sport
muscle(n) عضلة	something inside your body that you use when you move
powerlifting(n) رياضة القوة البدنية	a sport where people push weights above their heads
put pressure on يمارس ضغطاً علي	to try to make someone do something
ramp(n) مُنْخَدَر - مَطْلَع للكراسي المتحركة	a sloping surface joining two places of different levels

spina bifida(n) تشقق العمود الفقري (عييب خلقي بالعمود الفقري)	a serious condition in which part of the spine العمود الفقري is not correctly developed at birth, leaving the nerves الأعصاب in the back الظهر without any protection حماية
wheelchair(n) كرسي متحرك	a chair with wheels used by someone who can't walk

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- Becoming a world champion in your sport is an amazing
a. competition b. winner c. medal d. achievement
(شرق المنصورة ٢٠٢٣)
- The government launched a/an to improve public transportation in the city.
a. competition b. achievement c. campaign d. charity
(غرب القاهرة ٢٠٢٣)
- Our company is with foreign companies to increase its sales.
a. competing b. completing c. achieving d. believing
(ادكو ٢٠٢٣)
- There must be for wheelchairs.
a. achievements b. ramps c. disabilities d. handicap
(أبو المطاير ٢٠٢٣)
- Like ordinary people, people with can play sports and win medals.
a. achievements b. ramps c. disabilities d. healthy diet
(كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)
- This child needs good care as he was born with
a. campaign b. ability c. description d. polio
(النوبارية ٢٠٢٣)
- Huda Sharawy was a great for woman's rights in Egypt.
a. competitor b. member c. campaigner d. champion
(ادفو ٢٠٢٣)
- The Paralympic Games tournament is held for athletes.
a. normal b. disabled c. insane d. natural
(إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣)
- School is not always easy, so you need to expect some
a. highs and lows b. high and low c. highs and dry d. high and mighty
(أسوان ٢٠٢٣)
- My sister won a gold in the Olympics.
a. modal b. medal c. middle d. media
(أبو المطاير ٢٠٢٣)

11. Doing regular exercises makes your stronger and more flexible.
a. muscles b. health c. pressure d. hearing
(ادفو ٢٠٢٣)
12. Is an Olympic sport?
a. campaign b. diversity c. Paralympics d. powerlifting
13. Environmental groups try hard to reduce pollution.
a. activist b. Paralympian c. celebrity d. colleague
14. You need to be hard-working and organized to your goals in life.
a. interview b. request c. achieve d. retire
15. He won't accept this offer. Don't put much on him.
a. pressure b. diversity c. staff d. difference
16. I looked for the lost key, but I couldn't find it.
a. nowhere b. high and low c. highs and lows d. her and their
17. As a, he has very strong muscles.
a. campaigner b. powerlifter c. colleague d. celebrity
18. After the accident, Hany couldn't walk and he had to use a/an
a. bike b. wheelchair c. armchair d. pair of glasses
(منطقة أسبوط الأزهرية - أدبي ٢٠٢٣)

2 Important Vocabulary

19. Mohammed Salah is a that all people like.
a. celebrity b. popular c. celebrated d. celebration
(رشيد ٢٠٢٣)
20. Good teachers can their students to reach their full potential.
a. discourage b. inspire c. achieve d. employ
(البحيرة ٢٠٢٣)
21. Smoking has a serious on health.
a. effect b. impact c. influence d. all mentioned
(سمنود ٢٠٢٣)
22. Most players feel sad when they
a. campaign b. retire c. apply d. score
(زفتي ٢٠٢٣)
23. My father has been from assistant manager to the manager of the company.
a. lifted b. promoted c. owned d. competed
(غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)
24. She was the greatest Egyptian in swimming.
a. hero b. championship c. power d. champion
(غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)
25. Egyptian win more medals than Olympians.
a. activists b. Paralympians c. celebrities d. colleagues
26. As an, he won a gold medal.
a. Olympic b. Olympian c. Olympics d. Paralympian

27. Athletes with disabilities can take part in the
 a. Olympics b. diversity c. Paralympics d. powerlifting
28. I think the of opinion is an advantage.
 a. campaign b. diversity c. Paralympics d. powerlifting
29. People who cannot see suffer from a/an disability.
 a. disabled b. medicine c. physical d. Olympic
30. As they are injured, they need treatment in a hospital or clinic.
 a. disabled b. medical c. magical d. Olympic
31. follow particular food programmes and do regular exercise.
 a. Athletes b. Athletics c. Recorders d. Records
32. makes you follow particular food programmes and do regular exercise.
 a. Athletes b. Athletics c. Recorders d. Records

3 Definitions

33. A/An is a person who believes strongly in social change and works hard to make this happen. (ساقلة ٢٠٢٣)
 a. competitor b. activist c. daydreamer d. carer
34. A is a sloping surface that joins two places of different levels. (ادكو ٢٠٢٣)
 a. camp b. rose c. race d. ramp
35. is a serious disease of the nerves in the spine, that often results in someone being permanently unable to move particular muscles. (كوم حماده ٢٠٢٣)
 a. Spina bifida b. Measles c. Paralympics d. Stamina
36. A/An is something good that you have successfully done.
 a. department b. movement c. achievement d. government
37. To means to take part in a race or a competition.
 a. complete b. compete c. complain d. benefit
38. is a physical difference that makes it difficult for someone to do something.
 a. Challenge b. Intelligence c. Strength d. Disability
39. A/An is something inside your body that you use when you move.
 a. muscle b. tooth c. nail d. eyebrow
40. is a sport where people push weights above their heads.
 a. Wrestling b. Windsurfing c. Powerlifting d. Boxing
41. To is to work in an organised way to change things.
 a. campaign b. amaze c. break d. complain
42. To means to try to make someone do something.
 a. impact b. access c. benefit d. put pressure on

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations المتلازمات اللفظية

achieve	success	يحقق النجاح	do	something good	يفعل شيئاً جيداً
be	a success	يحقق النجاح	do/play	a sport	يمارس رياضة
arrange	a meeting	يرتب لاجتماع/لمقابلة	make	a difference	يُحسن الأمور
come	fourth	يحصل على المركز الرابع	play	in a wheelchair	يلعب على كرسي متحرك
give	a talk	يلقي خطبة	practise	a sport	يمارس رياضة
	a challenge	يمثل تحدياً	run	a campaign	يدير حملة
	a disability	لديه إعاقة	take	a lift up	يصعد بالأسانسير
	an impact	له تأثير		part in	يشارك في
have	ramps	به مطالع للكراسي المتحركة	win	a medal	يفوز بميدالية
	positive effects on	له آثار إيجابية على		a prize	يفوز بجائزة

2 Synonyms المترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
achievement	إنجاز
amazing	مذهل
high and low	في كل مكان
	triumph, success, accomplishment
	astonishing, breathtaking, awesome
	everywhere, all over, all around, in all places, in every place, far and wide

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
achievement	إنجاز
amazing	مذهل
celebrity	شخص مشهور
physical	بدلي
	failure, loss
	everyday
	nonentity, nobody
	mental
	الفشل - الخسارة
	عادي
	نكرة
	عقلي / ذهني

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

achieve		
achieve (v)	يَلْجِز - يُحَقِّق	- I am happy because I have achieved my goal.
achievement (n)	إنجاز	- I am happy because of the achievement of my goal.
achievable (adj)	يمكن تحقيقه	- I am happy because my goal has been achievable.

activist		
activate(v)	يُنشِط - يُفَعِّل	- I have to activate my Windows version نسخة.
activity(n)	نشاط	- We do some activities at school.
activist(n)	ناشط	- She is an environmental activist .
active(adj)	نشط - فَعَال	- Sama is an active student.
campaign		
campaign(v)	يطالب بـ / يناصر - يَحْتَشِد	- They campaigned for their favourite star.
campaign(n)	حملة	- They ran a campaign to defend their favourite star.
campaigner(n)	مدافع - مُؤَيِّد	- They were campaigners for their favourite star.
compete		
compete(v)	يُنافِس - يتسابق	- The two teams competed fairly.
competition(n)	مُسَابَقَة - مُنَافَسَة	- The two teams had a fair competition .
competitive(adj)	تنافسي	- I like the competitive nature of this player.
disability		
disability(n)	إعاقة - عَجْز	- He has a disability .
disabled(adj)	مُعاق	- He is disabled .
paralympic		
Paralympian(n)	لاعب أولمبي (من ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة)	- He is a Paralympian .
Paralympics(n)	أولمبياد ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة	- He took part in the Paralympics .
Paralympic(adj)	خاص بأولمبياد المعاقين	- He is a paralympic champion.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a wider range of	عدد/كم كبير من	get a place at the Olympics	يتأهل للأولمبياد
above heads	فوق الرؤوس	hold Olympic Games	تنظيم الألعاب الأولمبية
benefits of sports	فوائد الرياضة	in charge of	مستول عن
children with disabilities	اطفال ذوي احتياجات خاصة	make it difficult for	يجعل من الصعب علي
different to / from	مختلف عن	respect for diversity	احترام الاختلاف/التعددية
four times his body weight	أربع أضعاف وزن جسمه	win a medal for	يفوز بميدالية في

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

add ... to	يضيف ... إلى	go up	يصعد - يرتفع / يزداد
battle against	يقاقل / يكافح ضد	move around	يتنقل
campaign for	يشن حملة من أجل	promise to	يعد بأن
compete in	ينافس في	refer to	يشير إلى
complain about	يشكو من	retire from	يعتزل من
fight with	يقاقل باستخدام / مع	talk about	يتحدث عن
get around/round	يتجول - يتنقل		

7 لاحظ الفرق Clear the confusion

Olympics - Paralympics

تعنى كلمة (**Olympics**) الألعاب الأولمبية العادية، بينما تعنى كلمة (**Paralympics**) الألعاب الأولمبية لذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة، ولاحظ مشتقات كل منهما:

Olympics = Olympic Games	الألعاب الأولمبية	Paralympics = Paralympic Games	أولمبياد ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة
Olympic(adj)	أولمبي	Paralympic(adj)	خاص بأولمبياد ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة
Olympian(n)	لاعب أولمبي	Paralympian(n)	لاعب بارالمبي (من ذوي الاحتياجات الخاصة)

لاحظ أن كلمتي (**Olympics / Paralympics**) دائماً جمع ويأخذان فعل جمع في اللغة الرسمية:
- The Olympics / Paralympics are watched on TV by millions of people.
(**Not: is watched**)

-ing - er

بعض الرياضات تنتهي بـ (**ing**) بينما ينتهي اسم الرياضي منها بـ (**er**)، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

sport		sportsperson	
cycling	ركوب الدراجات	cycler	راكب دراجات
powerlifting	رياضة القوة البدنية	powerlifter	لاعب قوة بدنية
running	الجرى	runner	عداء
snowboarding	الثلج	snowboarder	متزلج (على الجليد)
swimming	السباحة	swimmer	سباح
windsurfing	رياضة ركوب الأمواج	windsurfer	المتزلج على الماء (راكب أمواج)

as well as

لاحظ استخدام (as well as) بمعنىين مختلفين :

1. as well as + n. / (inf. + ing)

بالإضافة إلى

- ex.** - I study Arabic as well as English.
- As well as growing plants, farmers keep animals.

2. as well as

بنفس الجودة أو الإتقان

- ex.** - She can't see as well as other people can. She has poor sight بصر ضعيف.

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

• ☆ MRQ : Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

- Global warming is one of the main that must be faced and solved. (طلعا ٢٠٢٣)
a. rules b. reviews c. roles
d. issues e. problems
- They wanted to know which sport I used to when I was young, but I refused to tell them. (Tablet Exam 2022)
a. fill b. cause c. do
d. make e. play
- He is determined مصمم to
a. achieve success b. be a success
c. success d. successful e. take success
- The word 'amazing' is synonymous with
a. ordinary b. breathtaking c. usual
d. awesome e. normal
- It is great to in the Olympics.
a. complete b. compete c. campaign
d. put pressure e. take part
- You can say that someone
a. is a disability b. disability c. is disabled
d. disabled e. has a disability
- We must look after children disabilities.
a. with b. who's c. who've
d. who're e. whose

• ☆ MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- I think you are good enough to be a in the next Olympics.
a. competition b. compete c. competitor d. competitively (أبو قرقاص ٢٠٢٣)

2. Ali who cannot walk can play tennis a wheel chair. (اسوان ٢٠٢٣)
 a. onto b. in c. at d. for
3. Every athlete hopes to take in the Olympic Games. (شبراخيت ٢٠٢٣)
 a. place b. part c. to d. off
4. The Ministry of Health is a campaign to treat people who have Virus C.
 a. doing b. winning c. taking d. running
5. I can swim as as my brother.
 a. soon b. well c. good d. many
6. The World Cup Finals take every four years.
 a. part b. part in c. place d. a & b
7. Workers usually retire their jobs at the age of 60.
 a. by b. with c. of d. from
8. Mustafa Kamel was a great for Egypt's independence.
 a. campaign b. campaigned c. campaigner d. campaigns
9. Mustafa Kamel was a great leader who for Egypt's independence.
 a. campaign b. campaigned c. campaigner d. campaigns
10. Which of the following prefixes make the opposite of 'ability' ?
 a. Non- b. Dis- c. In- d. Im-
11. As well as for a walk, he also played tennis.
 a. go b. going c. to go d. goes

PART III

READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

Lesson 1 SB page 52

Mahmoud Mohamed Youssef

Mahmoud Mohamed Youssef was a **champion**⁽¹⁾ in **Kung Fu**⁽²⁾ and won many medals in the sport at secondary school. After a terrible car accident, he now has a **disability**⁽³⁾ which means he has to use a **wheelchair**⁽⁴⁾. Mahmoud cannot walk again, but that has not stopped his love of sport.

He decided to practise a sport which you can play in a wheelchair and he became very good at wheelchair tennis.



- (1) بطل رياضى
- (2) لعبة الكونغ فو
- (3) إعاقة
- (4) كرسي متحرك

PART IV LANGUAGE

Relative clauses عبارات الوصل

1 who / which / whom / that : : الذى / التى / الذين / اللاتى

١ تُشير (who / that) إلى فاعل عاقل ويأتى بعدهما فعل ولا يمكن حذفهما :

- ex. - I met my pen friend who / that lives in London.
- Teachers are people who / that work at schools.

٢ تُشير (who / whom / that) إلى مفعول عاقل فى حالة المبنى للمعلوم ويأتى بعدهم فاعل ويمكن حذفهم :

- ex. - The man who / whom / that you met with me yesterday is my uncle.
= The man you met with me yesterday is my uncle.

٣ تُشير (which / that) إلى فاعل غير عاقل ويأتى بعدهما فعل ولا يمكن حذفهما :

- ex. - The dog which / that chased me belongs to my neighbours.

٤ تُشير (which / that) إلى مفعول غير عاقل ويأتى بعدهما فاعل ويمكن حذفهما :

- ex. - The car which / that I bought has a problem with the engine.
- The car I bought has a problem with the engine.

٥ لا تستخدم (that) فى الجمل الاعتراضية - أى بعد الفاصلة التحية (,) :

- ex. - Ismail Yassen, who is still a famous actor, died in the 1970s. (Not: that is....)
- Aswan, which is in the south of Egypt, is very hot. (Not: that is....)

٦ بالنسبة لحروف الجر مع (who / whom / that / which) :

١. لا تأتى حروف الجر قبل كل من (who / that) بل تأتى بعدهما فى نهاية الجملة الموصولة :

- ex. - This is my friend who I play tennis with. (Not: with who....)
- This is the motorbike that I go to school on. (Not: on that....)

٢. يمكن أن تأتى حروف الجر قبل أو بعد كل من (whom / which) :

- ex. - This is my friend whom I play tennis with.
= This is my friend with whom I play tennis.
- This is the motorbike which I go to school on.
= This is the motorbike on which I go to school.

2 where : حيث / حيثما / المكان الذى

١ تعود على المكان ولا يأتى بعدها فعل :

- ex. - This is the room where I sleep.
- She went to Cairo University where she studied Arabic language.

٢ لاحظ أن:

(حرف جر مناسب للمكان ... + **which** / **that**) / (حرف جر مناسب للمكان + **where** = **which**)

- ex.** - This is the room in which I sleep.
- This is the room which / that I sleep in.

٢ يمكن أن تستخدم (**which**) مع المكان بدون حروف جر عندما يكون المكان مفعول لجملته الوصل:

- لاحظ الجملتين التاليتين:

- ex.** - This is the house where we live. (المنزل مكان نعيش فيه)
- This is the house which we built. (المنزل مفعول، فهو الشيء الذي تم بنائه)

٤ لا تستخدم حروف جر تعود على المكان قبل أو بعد (**where**):

- ex.** - I went to the room in which I sleep. (**Not: the room in where**)
- I went to the room which I sleep in. (**Not: the room where in**)

Extra Notes

3 when :

حين / حينما / عندما / الوقت الذي :

١ تشير إلى الوقت أو الزمن ولا يأتي بعدها فعل:

- ex.** - 2012 was the year when Rodayna was born.
- Friday is the day when we don't go to school.
- Two o'clock is the time when I return home from school.

(حرف جر مناسب للتعبير الزمني ... + **which** / **that**) / (حرف جر مناسب للتعبير الزمني) = **when**

- ex.** - 2012 was the year in which Rodayna was born.
= 2012 was the year which / that Rodayna was born in.
- Friday is the day on which we don't go to school.
= Friday is the day which / that we don't go to school on.
- Seven o'clock is the time at which I get up.
= Seven o'clock is the time which / that I get up at.

٢ يمكن أن تستخدم (**which**) مع الوقت عندما يكون الوقت مفعول لجملته الوصل:

- لاحظ الجملتين التاليتين:

- ex.** - Winter is the season when we go to Aswan.
= We go to Aswan in winter.
- Winter is the season which we spend in Aswan.
= We spend winter in Aswan.

٢ لا تستخدم حروف جر تعود على التعبير الزمني قبل أو بعد (**when**):

- ex.** - Friday is the day on which my son was born. (**Not: the day on when**)
- Friday is the day which my son was born on. (**Not: the day when on**)

4 whose = (nouns + 's) / my - his - her - its - our - your - their ...

تدل على الملكية للعاقل وغير العاقل ويتبعها اسم (أي لا يأتي بعدها فعل) :

- ex. - I saw an old man whose son was kidnapped.
- She lives in a house whose roof is high.

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

١ لاحظ أن :

who / which / that + have / has / had + noun اسم = with + noun اسم

- ex. - The little girl who has long hair is my daughter.
= The little girl with long hair is my daughter.

٢ بعد الأعداد الترتيبية يمكن استبدال عبارة الوصل بـ (to + inf.) :

- The first / second / third only / last + وصل عبارة
= The first / second / third only / last + to + inf.

- ex. - Omar was the second student who arrived at school.
= Omar was the second student to arrive at school.

٣ في حالة المبنى للمعلوم يمكن استبدال عبارة الوصل بـ (inf. + ing.)

- ex. - The man who is carrying a big bag is my neighbour.
- The man carrying a big bag is my neighbour.

٤ في حالة المبنى للمجهول يمكن استبدال عبارة الوصل بـ (p.p.)

- ex. - The car which was stolen yesterday belongs to me.
- The car stolen yesterday belongs to me.

General Exercise On Language

● Apply

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

1. A nurse is a hard-working person is caring and reliable.

a. whose b. who c. which d. what

(شرق المنصورة ٢٠٢٣)

2. This is the company we work for.

a. where b. when c. which d. whom

(أبو المطامير ٢٠٢٣)

3. Last weekend, we visited the village my grandparents were born.

a. what b. when c. where d. that

(سمنود ٢٠٢٣)

4. August is the month we go to Alexandria. (زفتي ٢٠٢٣)

- a. where b. when c. which d. whose

5. Messi is the player goals are watched all over the world.

- a. which b. who c. whose d. whom

(الحوامدية ٢٠٢٣)

6. Luxor is a city is famous across the world. (منطقة البحيرة الأثرية - أدبي ٢٠٢٣)

- a. who b. when c. where d. which

2 Special cases

7. Mr Adel, is our new manager, is very friendly and kind. (منوف ٢٠٢٣)

- a. that b. whom c. what d. who

8. Friday is the day I usually take my family out for lunch. (كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)

- a. where b. who c. on which d. in which

9. Ted Hughes, about you read, loved children dearly. (شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)

- a. that b. whom c. whose d. who

10. The bed I slept in last night wasn't very comfortable. (المرج ٢٠٢٣)

- a. where b. whose c. which d. when

11. The bed I slept last night wasn't very comfortable.

- a. where b. whose c. which d. when

12. This is the engineer designs are so wonderful. (كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)

- a. who b. which c. whose d. whom

13. Friday is the day we usually spend revising our lessons.

- a. when b. which c. where d. what

(إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣)

14. Houses of mud bricks insulate heat. (إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣)

- a. which built b. are built c. built d. building

15. The man is a well-known celebrity. (كوم حماده ٢٠٢٣)

- a. she married b. she married him
c. whose she married d. that she married him

16. The great projects, out all over Egypt, will help to increase the standard of living. (شبراخيت ٢٠٢٣)

- a. are carried b. carried c. which carried d. carrying

17. The team has won the competition has qualified to the finals.

- a. who b. when c. where d. which

(بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)

18. I can't remember you told me about Ali. (غرب الفيوم ٢٠٢٣)
 a. who b. which c. whom d. what
19. This is the employee we are looking for.
 a. who b. whom c. that d. a, b & c
20. This is the employee for we are looking.
 a. who b. whom c. that d. a, b & c
21. Egypt, is an African country, is a regional power قوة إقليمية.
 a. which b. that c. when d. a & b
22. Egypt calls for peace and stability الاستقرار is a regional power قوة إقليمية.
 a. which b. that c. when d. a & b
23. The house I live is surrounded by a garden.
 a. where b. which c. that d. b & c
24. The house I live in is surrounded by a garden.
 a. where b. which c. that d. b & c
25. I live in a house is surrounded by a garden.
 a. where b. which c. that d. b & c
26. This is the school I learn.
 a. which b. that c. where d. a & b
27. This is the school my father runs.
 a. which b. that c. where d. a & b
28. The woman clothes are made of wool must feel warm.
 a. which b. that c. who d. whose
29. I usually buy from the supermarkets assistants are neighbourly.
 a. when b. which c. that d. whose



أحرص على اقتناء

EL-MOASSER

في اللغة الإنجليزية

امنح نفسك منه يستحق



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

department(n)	قسم	sign(ed) off(v)	يُسجّل خروج (من موقع إلكتروني)
employee(n)	مُوظّف	sign-off(n)	خاتمة - خروج
equal opportunities	فرص متكافئة	staff(n)	هيئة العاملين
madam(n)	سيدة - سيدتي	support(ed) (n - v)	يدعم - دَعَم
request(ed) (n - v)	طَلَب - يطلب	train(ed) (v)	يتدرّب
sales (n)	مبيعات	training (n)	تدريب

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

access(n)	مَدْخَل / مَنفذ - وُصُول	colleague(n)	زميل عمل
afraid(adj)	خائف	complaint(n)	شكوى
apologise(d) (v)	يعتذر	interview(ed)(n - v)	مقابلة شخصية - جوار - يُجرى مقابلة
book(ed) (v)	يحجز	polite(adj)	مُهذّب - مُؤدّب
bother(ed) (v)	يضايق	regards(n)	احترامي - تحياتي
break - broke - broken(v)	يكسر - يخالف	undercooked(adj)	غير مطهي جيّداً

3 Definitions التعريفات

Memorise	Understand
madam(n) سيدة - سيدتي	a polite way to call a woman whose name you do not know
request(n) طَلَب	you make this to say what you want
sign-off(n) خاتمة - خروج	another word for the close of an email

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

1. This company has 30 They are very skilled.

(النوبارية ٢٠٢٣)

- a. employers b. employees c. employment d. employs

2. Her new is very kind and treats her well. (الدوامية ٢٠٢٣)
 a. job b. employ c. employment d. employer
3. I used to enjoy going to the theatre, but I don't get much now. (مغافة ٢٠٢٣)
 a. competition b. chances c. opportunity d. achievement
4. There are many writers who and advocated women's rights. (التبين ٢٠٢٣)
 a. supposed b. supported c. opposed d. denied
5. The coach is the (بولاق ٢٠٢٣)
 a. train b. trainer c. trainee d. training
6. I need to for the next match.
 a. sign off b. support c. train d. training
7. A/An is another name for the closing of an email.
 a. request b. opening c. access d. sign-off
8. If you want to join our group, just make a
 a. request b. benefit c. celebrity d. condition
9. is a title for a woman you don't know.
 a. Mr b. Dr c. Madam d. Nurse
10. My brother is a professor in the physics in the faculty of science.
 a. department b. training c. sales d. employee
11. The of this company are all qualified for their jobs.
 a. employee b. employer c. crew d. staff
12. The high quality of our products increases the
 a. department b. training c. sales d. employee
13. You can an email with "I look forward to hearing from you".
 a. sign off b. support c. train d. request

2 Important Vocabulary

14. My are wonderful. They help me when I need them. (رشيد ٢٠٢٣)
 a. colleges b. collages c. cottages d. colleagues
15. The internet has given us to all information we need.
 a. powerlift b. ramp c. access d. muscle
16. The manager hasn't replied to the I have made.
 a. complain b. complaint c. research d. experiment
17. He the world record three years ago and he still holds it.
 a. broke b. missed c. messed d. benefitted
18. You are mistaken. You have to
 a. powerlift b. request c. apologise d. sign off

3 Definitions

19. You make to say what you want.
 a. sign off b. a sign-off c. request d. a request
20. is a polite way to call a woman whose name you do not know.
 a. Mum b. Madam c. Sir d. Honey

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations المتلازمات اللفظية

break	a record	يحطم الرقم القياسي	make	a complaint	يشكو
do	building work	يقوم بأعمال بناء	make	a request	يطلب
get	home	يصل للبيت	make	noise	يُخِذُ ضجيجاً
have	a reason to	لديه مُبرّر لـ	make	sure	يتأكد
hold	a record	يحمل الرقم القياسي	take	place	يُحَدِّث
receive	training	يتلقى تدريباً			

2 Synonyms المترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
bother	يضايق annoy, upset
diversity	التنوع - التعدد variety, variation
employ	يوظف - يشغل take on, hire, recruit
employ	يستغل harness, make good use of
sign-off	خاتمة close, closing, ending, conclusion
suitable	مناسب appropriate, fit

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
bother	يضايق please, satisfy
diversity	التنوع - التعدد uniformity
employ	يوظف - يشغل fire, sack, dismiss, discharge
sign-off	خاتمة opening
sign-off	تسجيل خروج sign-in
suitable	مناسب unsuitable, unfit, inappropriate

4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

(be) qualified for	مؤهل لـ	like me	مثلي
(be) suitable for	مناسب لـ	on long flights	في الرحلات الجوية الطويلة
break a world record for	يحطم الرقم القياسي العالمي في	sales department	قسم المبيعات
I do apologise	إنني أعتذر	sorry about / for	شاعر بالأسف بخصوص
I'm afraid	يؤسفني أن	training in how to	تدريب على كيفية
		Kind regards	مع خالص تحياتي

5

Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

apply for	يتقدم بطلب لـ	reply to	يُرَدُّ على
be out	بالخارج / غير موجود	speak to	يتحدث إلى
come in for	يأتي من أجل	start ... with	يبدأ ... بـ
go back to	يعود إلى	thank ... for	يشكر ... على
hear from	يتلقى أخبار من	train ... to	يُدرَّب ... على
look forward to	يتطلع إلى	turn ... down	يُخفض صوت ... - يرفض

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

★ MRQ : Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. "How many people did the company employ?" The antonyms of the verb "employ" are
(النزهة ٢٠٢٣)
a. hire b. fire c. understand
d. learn e. discharge
2. "Don't bother an animal, or it might bite you." The antonyms of "bother" can be
(العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٣)
a. upset b. break c. please
d. satisfy e. annoy
3. He extra training to lose weight before joining the first team.
a. achieved b. made c. held d. received e. did
4. You can a record.
a. break b. hold c. mess d. receive e. go
5. "I think red is not suitable as a colour for a formal suit." The adjective 'suitable' in this context is a synonym of
a. appropriate b. inappropriate c. fit d. unsuitable e. unfit
6. When you want someone to do something for you, you
a. do it b. make it c. make a request
d. ask them to do it e. depend on yourself

★ MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The athlete was over the moon when he the world record. (بورسعيد ٢٠٢٣)
a. broke b. crashed c. splashed d. devastated
2. Excuse me, I'd like to a complaint. My soup is cold. (الوسيم ٢٠٢٣)
a. get b. do c. make d. communicate
3. Computers have it possible for people to work from home. (ادفو ٢٠٢٣)
a. done b. taken c. given d. made

4. The crime place at midnight.
a. made b. had c. did d. took
5. We can say someone a difference, noise or a request.
a. does b. achieves c. makes d. runs
6. 'Diversity' and 'variety' are
a. antonyms b. opposites c. synonyms d. a & b
7. I trained my son on himself.
a. depend b. depended c. to depend d. depends
8. We always start an informal email the greeting التحية.
a. for b. with c. of d. to
9. I added some lemon my soup.
a. to b. of c. from d. at
10. He has the world record for five years. No one else could even reach his record.
a. held b. broken c. missed d. a, b & c

PART III

READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Text

Lesson 4 WB page 117

Dear Christine Harrison,

Thank you for your **interest**⁽¹⁾ in working for our company. I am writing to reply to your questions.

Our company already has two disabled **employees**⁽²⁾. We do not have a **lift**⁽³⁾ but we have **ramps**⁽⁴⁾ to both of the floors in our building. All of our **staff**⁽⁵⁾ are **trained to**⁽⁶⁾ **support**⁽⁷⁾ our disabled **colleagues**⁽⁸⁾.

I would like to know which **qualifications**⁽⁹⁾ you have. Could you come in for an **interview**⁽¹⁰⁾ next week?

I **look forward to**⁽¹¹⁾ hearing from you.

Kind **regards**⁽¹²⁾.

Medhat Shoukry

Manager



- (1) اهتمام
- (2) موظفين
- (3) مصعد
- (4) مطالع للكراسي المتحركة
- (5) فريق العمل
- (6) متدرب لـ
- (7) يساعد / يساعد
- (8) زملاء
- (9) مؤهلات
- (10) مقابلة رسمية
- (11) يتطلع إلى
- (12) لحيات

General Exercise On Language

● Apply

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started : Check what you have learnt

1. The teachers skills on the computer are limited will meet a big challenge next year. (مغافة ٢٠٢٣)
a. who b. who's c. whose d. that
2. This is the village I was born. (بولق ٢٠٢٣)
a. who b. where c. which d. whom
3. Our flat, is on the fifth floor, overlooks the Nile. (إدفو ٢٠٢٣)
a. which b. what c. whose d. where
4. For me, my home is a place I feel free and relaxed.
a. who b. where c. when d. that
5. For me, my home is a place I feel free and relaxed in.
a. who b. where c. when d. which
6. Summer is the season we go on holiday.
a. where b. which c. who d. when
7. This is the time Rodayna usually arrives home.
a. whose b. who c. when d. which
8. The girl has been injured in the accident is now in hospital.
a. whom b. when c. who d. where
9. The machine broke down has now been repaired.
a. who b. which c. whom d. where
10. The bus goes to the city centre runs every half an hour.
a. which b. on which c. where d. when
11. She works for a company produces mobile phones.
a. who b. that c. where d. when
12. I can't find the books I got from the library.
a. that b. where c. what d. when
13. The writer novel won the first prize gave me a signed copy as a present.
a. whose b. which c. who d. when

2 Special cases

14. I can't remember the name of the person I borrowed this pen.
a. from where b. from which c. to whom d. from whom
(الزيتون ٢٠٢٣)
15. I have unforgettable memories of my village I was born in.
a. where b. at which c. in which d. which
(أبو قرقاص ٢٠٢٣)
16. The Eastern Desert, is very dry, has very little wildlife.
a. where b. when c. that d. which
17. Lake Nasser, was formed behind the High Dam, is the largest man-made lake.
a. where b. whom c. that d. which
18. Armstrong was the first on the moon.
a. walking b. to walk
c. man he walked d. one who walking
19. A new tower was built next to the house I was born.
a. in where b. in which c. when d. no pronoun
20. Will you lend me the DVD you bought last week?
a. in which b. whose c. when d. no pronoun
21. I found the pen for I was searching.
a. that b. which c. whose d. what
22. I went to the grocer's I bought what I need.
a. when b. who c. which d. where
23. I met a man with I used to work.
a. whom b. which c. that d. who
24. Eighteen is the age you can vote in elections. تُصوّت في الانتخابات
a. with which b. in which c. which d. at which
25. Aswan, is in the south of Egypt, is where I currently work.
a. where b. which c. in which d. that
26. "Awlad Elam", by Karim Abd El-Aziz, is a fantastic movie.
a. which it was starred b. which is starred
c. that is starred d. was starred
27. He had a bitter argument with his wife, annoyed him much.
a. that b. whose c. when d. which
28. Japan, consists of a lot of islands, is a leading country in the Far East.
a. which b. where c. who d. that

29. Haven't I told you about the destination I want to visit for my next holiday?
a. what b. where c. when d. that
30. The movie yesterday was very interesting.
a. we watched it b. that watched it
c. which watched it d. we watched
31. This bookstore is my brother works.
a. which b. that c. when d. where

3 Check your understanding

32. "Yesterday, Ahmed visited his aunt. He hadn't seen her for ages."
Which of the following gives the same meaning?
a. Yesterday, Ahmed visited his aunt who she hadn't been seen for ages.
b. Yesterday, Ahmed visited his aunt who he hadn't seen her for ages.
c. Yesterday, Ahmed visited his aunt who he hadn't seen for ages.
d. Yesterday, Ahmed visited his aunt who hadn't seen for ages.
33. "I like the sight of farmers when they water the fields." This means
a. I like the sight of the farmer watered the fields.
b. I like the sight of one farmer watering the fields.
c. I like the sight of farmers watered the fields.
d. I like the sight of farmers watering the fields.
34. "Most people prefer furniture that carpenters make in Damietta."
Which choice gives the same meaning?
a. Most people prefer furniture making in Damietta.
b. Most people prefer furniture made in Damietta.
c. Most people prefer furniture which made in Damietta.
d. Most people prefer furniture was made in Damietta.
35. "No one left the meeting except for Ayman." What does this mean?
a. Ayman was the only person to leave the meeting.
b. Ayman was the second person to leave the meeting.
c. Ayman was the last to leave the meeting.
d. Ayman was the only person to attend the meeting.
36. "I have three close friends who work abroad." This means
a. I have three close friends who worked abroad.
b. I have three close friends are working abroad.
c. I have three close friends worked abroad.
d. I have three close friends, all of whom work abroad.



PART I GRAMMATICAL HINTS

١ يُمكن استخدام (some) كضمير بمعنى (البعض) ويأتي بعدها فعل مفرد إذا كانت تشير لاسم غير معدود وفعل جمع إذا كانت تشير لاسم معدود:

- ex. - Most information on the internet is in English. Some is in different languages like Arabic.
- The students are mostly clever. However, some don't work hard enough.

٢ أسماء الدول التي تتكون من كلمة واحدة لا تأخذ (the) إلا إذا كان الاسم جمعًا فتوضع قبله (the) مثل:

- ex. - The Netherlands هولندا - The Philippines الفلبين

٣ يأتي بعد (look forward to) اسم أو (inf. + ing):

- ex. - I look forward from my uncle.
a. to hear b. to hearing c. of hearing d. hearing

٤ لاحظ استخدام (whatever):

..... • Whatever + اسم + فاعل + فعل

- ex. - Whatever work she had, she found time to play the piano.

..... • Whatever + فاعل + فعل

- ex. - You must do whatever I say.

..... • Whatever + فعل

- ex. - I'll always support you whatever happens.

٥ الكلمات التالية يأتي بعدها فعل مفرد ويعوض عنها ضمير جمع

Someone - somebody - anyone - anybody - everyone -
everybody - no one - nobody

- ex. - Somebody has knocked on the door but when I opened the door, they have gone.
ex. - A disabled person is someone who cannot use part of their body in the way that most people can.

٦ يُمكن استخدام (do - does - did) قبل الفعل الأساسي (المصدر) في المضارع البسيط والماضي البسيط بشكل بلاغي للتأكيد أو لإعطاء قوة للمعنى:

- ex. - I do know who broke the window. - He did shout at me.

Exercise On Language Hints

❖ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Most of my friends like football, but prefer handball.
a. some b. any c. every d. each
2. A: Do you know who broke my glasses ? B: Yes, Sama them.
a. broke b. did break c. does break d. a & b
3. Everyone waiting for your speech.
a. has b. have c. is d. are
4. Someone is ringing the doorbell. I will see who
a. she is b. he is c. they are d. are they
5. I'll help you whatever
a. is happened b. happens c. happening d. a & b
6. Whatever you make, I will support you.
a. choose b. chose c. chosen d. choice
7. is an Arab country.
a. Lebanon b. The Lebanon c. Lebanese d. a & b
8. is an Asian country.
a. Philippines b. The Philippines
c. Philippines' d. a & b

PART II

LANGUAGE SKILLS

1 Reading

❖ Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

(طفا ٢٣ ٢٠)

In "Hamlet", a play written by William Shakespeare, Gertrude was the Queen of Denmark two months after the death of the King of Denmark. She married Claudius, his brother. She did not know that Claudius was evil. People believed that he had killed his brother so that he himself might become the king. Hamlet was her son. Hamlet loved his dead father and was very sad at his death. His mother's marriage made Hamlet even more unhappy. He became tired of the world; he had no more pleasure in the things he used to do. He stopped wanting to read, to play and to do all the things that young men love to do.

Neither Hamlet's mother nor Claudius could do anything to make

Hamlet happier. The ghost of Hamlet's father **appeared** and told his son that Claudius killed him while sleeping. He poured poisonous liquid into his ears and caused his death. He told him that he must kill his uncle but he asked him not to hurt his mother. Hamlet pretended to be mad. He thought of a plan. He asked some visiting actors to act a story representing circumstances similar to those described by the ghost, under which Claudius poisoned Hamlet's father. When the play was presented as planned, the performance clearly annoyed Claudius. Hamlet confronted his mother with her undeserved loyalty to Claudius who began to feel that his life was in danger. So, Claudius sent Hamlet to England with secret orders that Hamlet be executed by the King of England.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d

1. The underlined word "He" refers to
 a. Claudius b. Hamlet c. his friend d. his father
2. In order to be sure that his uncle killed his father, Hamlet
 a. became tired of the world
 b. had no more pleasure in the things he used to do
 c. stopped wanting to read
 d. asked the actors to act the story which is like the death of his father
3. After Hamlet had met the ghost, he pretended to be
 a. sad b. insane c. tired d. pleased
4. The ghost of Hamlet's father appeared and told his that Claudius killed him while sleeping.
 a. son b. daughter c. wife d. brother
5. People believed that he had killed his brother
 a. to marry his wife b. because he hated him
 c. to become the king d. because he loved blood
6. How was Hamlet's father killed?
 a. His ears were cut
 b. His wife killed him.
 c. A poisonous liquid was poured into his ears
 d. He was very ill.
7. The antonym of the word "**appeared**" is
 a. came out b. vanished c. came into sight d. seemed longer

1. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. The sincere citizen is the person who devotes themselves and their efforts for the sake of their fatherland so that it may progress and flourish like developed states.

(شعبان القناطر ٢٠٢٣)

- a. إن المواطن العادي هو ذلك الذي يكرس نفسه وجهوده من أجل وطنه لكي يتقدم ويزدهر مثل الدول المتقدمة.
- b. إن المواطن المخلص هو ذلك الذي يكرس نفسه وجهوده من أجل وطنه لكي يتقدم ويزدهر مثل الدول المتقدمة.
- c. إن المواطن المخلص هو ذلك الذي يكرس نفسه وماله من أجل وطنه لكي يتقدم ويزدهر مثل الدول المتقدمة.
- d. إن المواطن الصالح هو ذلك الذي يتبرع بنفسه وجهوده من أجل وطنه لكي يتقدم ويزدهر مثل الدول النامية.

2. Accepting others is a highly civilized aspect that we all should have. You can express your opinion and respect the opinions of others as well.

(كفر الزيات ٢٠٢٣)

- a. إن تقبل الآخر جانب شديد التحضر قد يكون لدينا جميعاً، ويمكنك أن تُعبر عن رأيك مع احترام آراء الآخرين أيضاً.
- b. إن تقبل الآخر جانب شديد التحضر يجب أن يكون لدينا جميعاً، ويمكنك أن تُعبر عن رأيك وليس بالضرورة احترام آراء الآخرين أيضاً.
- c. إن تقبل الآخر جانب حضاري شاق يجب أن يكون لدينا جميعاً، ويمكنك أن تُعبر عن رأيك مع احترام آراء النفس أيضاً.
- d. إن تقبل الآخر جانب شديد التحضر يجب أن يكون لدينا جميعاً، ويمكنك أن تُعبر عن رأيك مع احترام آراء الآخرين أيضاً.

2. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d :

١. لم يحد الرياضيون الفائزون بميداليات أولمبية يصلون مصر حتى تم تكريمهم على نطاق واسع، كما فبحوا أوسمة رفيعة.

(دمياط ٢٠٢٣)

- a. Hardly the athletes who won the Olympic medals had arrived in Egypt when they were honored on a large scale. They were also given high rewards.
- b. Hardly had that athletes who won the Olympic medals arrived in Egypt than they were honored on a large scale. They were also given high awards.
- c. Hardly had the athletes who had won the Olympic medals arrived in Egypt when they were honored on a large scale. They were also given high rewards.
- d. Hardly had the athletes who had won the Olympic medals arrived in Egypt than they were honored on a large scale. They were also given high rewards.

٢. يبذل الوالدين قصارى جهدهم لتوفير حياة سعيدة آمنة لنا، لذا يجب علينا إسعادهم وطاقاتهم واتباع نصائحهم.
(سمنود ٢٠٢٣)

- Our parents do their best to provide us with a happy, secure life. So, we should please them, obey them and follow their advice.
- Our parents do their best to secure our live happily. So, we should please them, obey them and follow their advice.
- Our parents do their best to rescue our happy, secure life. So, we should please them, obey them and follow their advice.
- Our parents exert efforts to live a happy secure life. So, we should release them, obey them and follow their advice.

PART III JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL ▶ للفائقين فقط

campaign

- campaign (n)** قِبال / معركة / حملة عسكرية
 - The campaign succeeded in arresting the terrorists.
 - campaign (for / against) (n)** خفلة (لصالح / ضد)
 - The government is running a campaign against Virus C.
- لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية:
- launch / begin a campaign يبدأ حملة
 - run / carry out a campaign يقوم بحملة
 - lead a campaign يقود حملة
 - a national campaign حملة قومية
 - an advertising / marketing campaign حملة إعلانية / تسويقية
 - campaign (for / against) (v)** يناصر / يطالب / يقوم بحملة لصالح / ضد
 - The workers campaigned for less working hours.
 - campaigner(for) (n)** مدافع - مؤيد - مناصر
 - Martin Luther King was a great campaigner for equality المساواة.

compete

- compete (for / to / against / with / in) (v)** يتنافس / يتنافس (من أجل / لكي / ضد / مع / في)
 - The two shops are competing for attracting more customers.
 - The two shops are competing to attract more customers.
 - The USA and Russia have always competed in space technology.
 - Mercedes is competing against BMW in the American market.

• **competition (n)**

- The weight lifting competition starts tomorrow.

مسابقة

• **competition (n)**

- The Egyptian athletes are preparing for the next competition.

منافسة - تنافس

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلزمات التالية:

- face a competition

يواجه منافسة

- fair / unfair competition

منافسة شريفة / غير شريفة

- take part in a competition

يشارك في مسابقة

- have / hold a competition

يقيم مسابقة

- run a competition

ينظم مسابقة

• **competitor (n)**

- There are 18 competitors for the gold medal.

منافس - مُتسابق

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. She doesn't speak English her sister.
a. in addition b. as good as c. as well d. as well as
2. Everyone ready for the race.
a. are b. is c. have d. has
3. Someone has forgotten money on the table.
a. his b. her c. their d. its
4. The majority of the staff work hard, but some lazy.
a. are b. is c. have d. has
5. Some conservationists campaign the rights of animals.
a. of b. by c. to d. for

Advanced Exercise on Language

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I spent three hours studying the files me.
a. which sent to b. sent to
c. which you sent them d. you sent them
2. Do you have an idea Ahmed has left the front door key?
a. that b. what c. where d. which
3. We know a lot of people lives are miserable.
a. who b. when c. where d. whose
4. Ayman and Ashraf, visit to Aswan was enjoyable, decided to stay there for much longer.
a. which b. that c. who d. whose



1. Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. Many charity work to support equal job opportunities. (الخصوص ٢٠٢٣)
a. campaigners b. sociologists c. racers
d. activists e. gardeners
2. "Some amazing athletes compete in different sports." The synonyms of "compete" are (غرب الإسكندرية ٢٠٢٣)
a. bully b. contest c. give up
d. surrender e. challenge

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. Winning the silver medal in powerlifting was the greatest of his life. (شرق مدينة نصر ٢٠٢٣)
a. achievement b. campaign c. competitor d. activist
2. Athletes with can take part in the Paralympics.
a. abilities b. disabilities c. records d. medals
3. He wants to in the national swimming championship next year. (حلوان ٢٠٢٣)
a. remove b. compete c. campaign d. cycle
4. The company has launched an advertising to increase its sales. (سمنود ٢٠٢٣)
a. campaign b. battle c. collection d. complaint
5. You need to be hard-working and organized to your goals in life.
a. interview b. request c. achieve d. retire
6. He won't accept this offer. Don't put much on him.
a. pressure b. diversity c. staff d. difference
7. You can an email with "I look forward to hearing from you".
a. sign off b. support c. train d. request
8. The residents stay ended have to renew it. (رشيد ٢٠٢٣)
a. which b. what c. whose d. who
9. Soiman is always making noise, makes me angry with him. (النوبارية ٢٠٢٣)
a. which b. that c. where d. who
10. The man car is white is my teacher. (الرحمانية ٢٠٢٣)
a. who b. whose c. that d. which
11. I will never forget the brave young man we met in the park last month. (ادكو ٢٠٢٣)
a. who's b. whose c. whom d. where
12. The cars are made in Japan are expensive. (الناب ٢٠٢٣)
a. who b. which c. whose d. where
13. Alexandria, I visit every summer, is indeed my favourite destination. (ساقلة ٢٠٢٣)
a. where b. which c. to which d. what

14. The market by the sea is the place you can buy really fresh fish.
a. which b. when c. where d. that

(المعصرة ٢٠٢٣)

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions : (السويس - جنوب ٢٠٢٣)

If you have to miss one meal a day, which meal will cause you the fewest health problems if you don't eat it?

Most people, if they are given the choice, especially people who are on a diet or very busy, will choose to skip breakfast. Many experts in the field of health consider breakfast the most important meal of the day. If we eat good breakfast, we will have energy to begin our working day. However, many people skip breakfast or take a cup of tea instead of a well-balanced meal.

Special tests and a recent study were set up to show the importance of breakfast. The result showed that if a person eats an adequate breakfast, they will work more efficiently and more productively than if they skip breakfast or eat a very poor one.

The study showed that if school children eat a good breakfast before going to school, they will learn more quickly and be able to concentrate more on their lessons for a longer period of time. The study also showed that, contrary to what many people believe, if you skip breakfast, you won't lose weight. This is because people become so hungry that they eat too much for lunch and end up gaining, not losing weight.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. According to the passage, when we don't eat breakfast,
a. our bodies lose energy b. we lose weight
c. our concentration increases d. we begin our working day
2. set up special tests to show the importance of a balanced meal before going to work.
a. Hungry people b. Teachers c. Students d. Experts
3. Most people would skip breakfast for
a. special tests b. a snack c. a cup of tea d. a poor breakfast
4. The underlined word "skip" is similar in meaning to
a. take b. give c. miss d. have
5. People may eat too much when
a. they don't eat breakfast b. they do not do morning exercise
c. they work less d. they are fat
6. Special tests were organized to analyse how participants' bodies functioned when they had
a. skipped breakfasts b. had supper
c. eaten special breakfasts d. had all three meals
7. Our bodies need
a. skipping breakfast b. a cup of tea
c. a well-balanced breakfast d. much food

4. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

Charities have an undeniable role in providing help and support for the poor and needy, so we should boost them both financially and with our efforts.

(العاشر من رمضان ٢٠٢٣)

- a. تلعب المؤسسات الخيرية دوراً غير أساسي في تقديم المساعدة للفقراء والمحتاجين، لذلك يجب علينا أن ندعمها مادياً وبمجهوداتنا.
- b. تلعب المؤسسات الخيرية دوراً لا يُنكر في تقديم المساعدة للفقراء والمحتاجين، لذلك يجب علينا أن ندعمها مادياً وبمجهوداتنا.
- c. تلعب المنظمات الحكومية دوراً لا يُنكر في تقديم المساعدة للفقراء والمحتاجين، لذلك يجب علينا أن ندعمها مادياً وبمجهوداتنا.
- d. تلعب المؤسسات الخيرية دوراً لا يُنكر في توظيف الفقراء والمحتاجين، لذلك يجب علينا أن ندعمها مادياً وبمجهوداتنا.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

لقد تم استقبال العديد من الاختراعات العظيمة في البداية بالسخرية والإنكار ولكن بعد ذلك أصبحت حقائق مُسلّم بها لدى كل الناس على مر العصور.

(شبين القناطر ٢٠٢٣)

- a. Many great inventions were initially received with ridicule and welcome, but after that they became taken-for-granted facts for all people over the years.
- b. Many great inventions were initially received with ridicule and denial, but after that they became taken-for-rejected facts for all people over the years.
- c. Many great inventions were eventually received with ridicule and denial, but after that they became taken-for-granted facts for all people over the years.
- d. Many great inventions were initially received with ridicule and denial, but after that they became taken-for-granted facts for all people over the years.

5. Answer the following questions:

1. Why do you think George was still angry after Silver answered the pirates' question ?

.....

2. If you were Dr Livesey would you look after the ill pirates ? Why/ Why not ?

.....

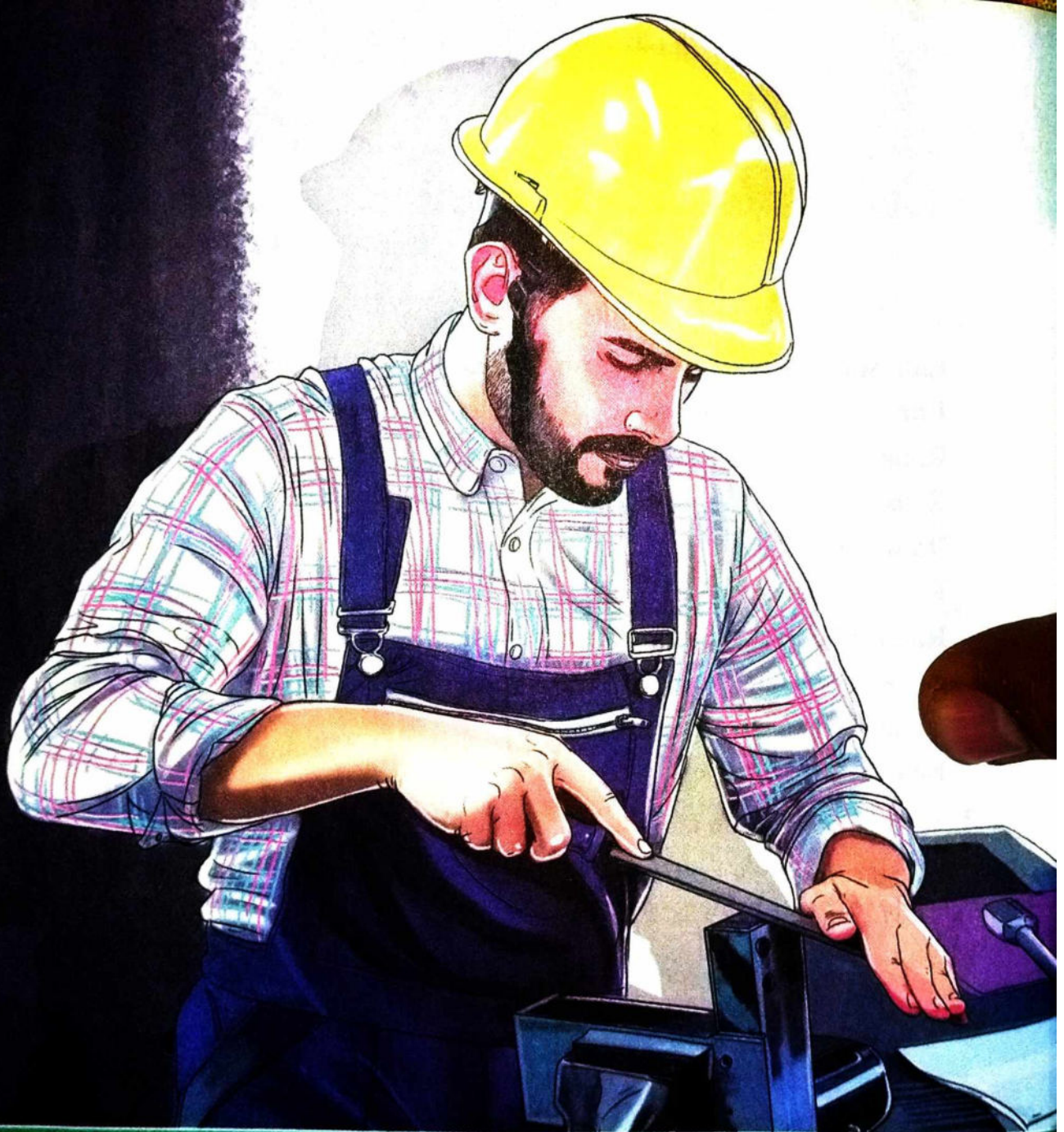
3. Why did Jim decide to stay with Silver, and not leave with Dr Livesey ?

.....

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:

“The role of teachers in the society”

.....
.....
.....



UNIT 12

Hard work

SB pages 62 : 71 WB pages 120 : 125

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

- ☉ Reading : A summary of Silas Marner
- ☉ Writing : A book review ; a short story
- ☉ Listening : A conversation about how people work
- ☉ Speaking : Explaining mysteries

- ☉ Language : Modal verbs of possibility can't, might, must
- ☉ Critical thinking : Research and present answers to a famous mystery



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

disappear(ed)(v)	يختفي	mystery(n)	لُغز - بسر غامض
engaged(adj)	خاطب / مخطوبة	solve(d) (v)	يحل
guilty(adj)	مُذنب	weaver(n)	نَساج / حائك

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

alone (adj – adv)	بمفرده	local(adj)	محلي
Artificial	الذكاء الاصطناعي	look(ed) (v)	يبدو - ينظر
Intelligence (AI)(n)		machinery(n)	آلات
call(ed) (v)	يُسمِّي - يتصل - ينادي	manual(adj)	يدوي
cloth(n)	القماش	operate(d) (v)	يُشغِّل - يُدير
conditions(n)	ظروف	ordinary(adj)	عادي - معتاد
confused(adj)	مُتَحَيِّر - مُرتبك	pale(adj)	شاحب - باهت
cottage(n)	كوخ	prove – proved –	يُثبت
crazy(adj)	مجنون	proved/ proven (v)	
customer(n)	زبون	realise(d) (v)	يُدرك
earlier(adv)	منذ - قبل ذلك	review(n)	عرض نقدي - معالجة نقدية
early years	السنوات الأولى - مستقبل العمر	sick(adj)	مريض
efficiently(adv)	بكفاءة	special(adj)	خاص - مُميَّز
empty(ied) (adj - v)	فارغ - يُفَرِّغ	steal – stole – stolen (v)	يسرق
fireplace(n)	مدفأة	survive(d)	يبقى على قيد الحياة - ينجو
hide - hid -	يُخفي	twist(ed) (v)	يلوي / يَنْزِم
hidden(n)		unpleasant(adj)	غير سار
instead(adv)	بدلاً من ذلك	village(n)	قرية
join(ed) in (phr. v)	يتحد - يشارك	villager(n)	شخص قروي
labour(n)	عمل	whole (adj – n)	بالكامل - كل

3 Definitions التعريفات

Memorise	Understand
disappear(ed)(v) يختفي	become impossible to see or find
engaged(adj) خاطب / مخطوبة	to be in a relationship to get married.

guilty (adj)	مُذِنِب	describes someone who has broken a rule or a law
mystery (n)	لُغْز - سِر غامض	something that is difficult to explain or understand
solve (d) (v)	يَجِل	find an answer to a problem
weaver (n)	نَشَاج / حَائِك	a person who makes clothes by twisting wool together

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- He was arrested as he was of robbing a bank. (اوسيم ٢٠٢٣)
a. active b. guilty c. bored d. engaged
- Sara is to a young doctor called Mustafa.
a. abandoned b. engaged c. main d. strange
- We've been trying to this problem for several weeks.
a. solve b. disappear c. recommend d. prove
- The crime is still a The police are still working on it.
a. whole b. monster c. village d. mystery
- My grandfather was a clever who made fine pullovers.
a. monster b. page turner c. weaver d. character
- The moon has behind the dark cloud.
a. solved b. disappeared c. recommended d. proved

2 Important Vocabulary

- Heba hasn't eaten anything for two days, so she looks (الزيتون ٢٠٢٣)
a. ball b. plot c. pole d. pale
- Only two little children after the serious accident. (كوم حمادة ٢٠٢٣)
a. destroyed b. damaged c. survived d. broke
- Living in a is better for people who prefer simple life.
a. whole b. monster c. village d. mystery
- Weavers are good at wool together to make cloth.
a. solving b. disappearing c. adopting d. twisting
- I want to discuss the problem as a , not only a single part of it.
a. whole b. monster c. village d. mystery
- The farmer keeps his tools in a
a. labour b. fireplace c. cottage d. condition
- In general, doing work needs a lot of effort.
a. pale b. manual c. local d. sick
- In unit 12, I have learnt how to write a detailed book expressing what I think of it.
a. review b. shape c. title d. sale

15. Artificial will play a more important role in the future.
 a. Review b. Machinery c. Cloth d. Intelligence
16. He didn't go to prison because his lawyer that he was not guilty.
 a. refused b. denied c. proved d. disproved
17. I'm really I can't tell you what to do.
 a. close b. confused c. abandoned d. local
18. Doing manual is usually tiring.
 a. labour b. fireplace c. cottage d. condition
19. I last met Ahmed yesterday. I had met him five days
 a. ago b. earlier c. since d. yet
20. He started his career as a journalist in a newspaper.
 a. pale b. manual c. local d. crazy
21. This poor man lives in miserable
 a. labours b. fireplaces c. machinery d. conditions
22. All my cousins in to help me prepare for my wedding.
 a. joined b. lied c. forgot d. recommended
23. This factory has heavy
 a. intelligence b. machinery c. cloth d. review
24. He reported that his motorbike had been
 a. shaped b. shared c. stolen d. recommended
25. I my daughter Sama because it was the name of one of my polite and intelligent students.
 a. called b. told c. adopted d. abandoned
26. Children with disabilities need care.
 a. pale b. manual c. local d. special
27. In winter, most European families sit by the
 a. labour b. fireplace c. cottage d. condition
28. She used a clean piece of to clean the table.
 a. intelligence b. machinery c. cloth d. review

3 Definitions

29. To is to find an answer to a problem.
 a. abandon b. solve c. weave d. disappear
30. A is a person who makes clothes by twisting wool together.
 a. mystery b. character c. weaver d. page-turner
31. To means to become impossible to see or find.
 a. abandon b. solve c. weave d. disappear

32. describes someone who has broken a rule or a law.
a. Guilty b. Close c. Mysterious d. Alone
33. To be is to be in a relationship to get married.
a. guilty b. engaged c. mysterious d. innocent
34. A is something that is difficult to explain or understand.
a. mystery b. character c. weaver d. page-turner

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations المتلازمات اللفظية

be	engaged to / تتم خطبته / خطبتها ل	live	lonely lives يعيشون في عزلة
	married to يتزوج من	look / be	sad يبدو حزينا
do	practice يتمرن	solve	a crime يفك غموض الجريمة
earn / make	money يكسب مال		a mystery يكشف غموض اللغز
feel	confused يشعر بالحيرة	take	care of يراعي / يعتني بـ
	sorry for يشعر بالأسف / بالحزن على	tell	a story يحكي قصة
win	first place يفوز بالمركز الأول	have	an accident يتعرض لحادث
			an argument with يتجادل مع - يحتد علي

2 Synonyms المترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
disappear يختفي	vanish
disappear يموت - ينقرض	die out, die
disappear يضيع	get lost, go missing
earlier أسبق - قبل ذلك	former, previous
guilty مُذنب	convicted
mystery لُغز - بئر غامض	secrecy, ambiguity

3 Antonyms المتضادات

Word	Antonym (= Opposite)
disappear يختفي	appear, come out يظهر
disappear يموت - ينقرض	survive يبقى حياً
earlier منذ - قبل ذلك	later تالي / لاحق
guilty مُذنب	innocent, guiltless بريء
prove يُثبت	disprove يدحض
solve يحل	complicate يُعقد

4 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

disappear		
disappear(v)	يختفي	- I do not know why he has disappeared.
disappearance(n)	اختفاء	- I do not know the cause of his disappearance.
guilty		
guilt(n)	الذنب	- He has a feeling of guilt.
guilty(adj)	مُذنب	- He feels guilty.
mystery		
mystery(n)	لُغز - سِر غامض	- The cause of the fire is still a mystery.
mysterious(adj)	غامض - غير مفهوم	- The cause of the fire is still mysterious.
solve		
solve(v)	يحل	- I solved the problem.
solution(n)	حل	- I found a solution to the problem.
weaver		
weave(v)	ينسج	- He weaves woolen pullovers.
weaver(n)	نَسَّاج / حائك	- He is a weaver.

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

angry with	غاضب من	guilty of	مُذنب بـ
(be) gone	يضيع	have a special skill	لديه مهارة خاصة
(be) in a hurry	يكون مُتَعَجِّلاً	in the early years	في السنوات الأولى
compared to	مقارنة بـ	meet ... for lunch	يقابل ... على الغداء
disappear from under	يختفي من تحت	new to the village	جديد في / وافد جديد إلى القرية
do something bad	يفعل شيئاً سيئاً	sure about	متأكد من
feel sorry for/about	يشعر بالأسف علي	take care of	يرعى / يعتني بـ
friendly to	ودود مع		
work hard	يعمل بجد		

6 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

care about	يهتم بـ	manage to	يتمكن أن - ينجح في
come back	يعود	move to	ينتقل إلى
come from	يأتي من	offer to	يغرض أن
come to	يأتي إلي - يصل إلى	plan to	يخطط أن
disappear from	يختفي من	remember about	يتذكر ما يخص

forget about	ينسي ما يخص	return to	يعود / يُعيد إلى
hide ... from	يُخفي ... من	stay with	يقيم مع
join in	يشارك - يتفق - يتجد	steal ... from	يسرق ... من
look after	يرعى - يعتني بـ		

7 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

hard / hardly

لاحظ الفرق بين (hard) و (hardly) :

جاد - شاق - صعب - قاسي

• hard (adj)

- He is a **hard** worker. جاد
- Mum does a lot of **hard** work every day. شاق
- The driving test is **hard** to me. صعب

• hard (adv)

- He works **hard**. بجد
- The bully hit him **hard** on the head. بشدة

• hardly (adv)

- He **hardly** arrives on time. قلماً

بجد - بشدة

بالكاد - قلماً

لاحظ أن :

• hardly... any / hardly at all = almost no

- He **hardly** does any work. = He **hardly** works at all.

cloth / clothes

لاحظ الفرق بين (clothes) و (cloth) :

قمماش (كلمة لا تُعد وتُعامل معاملة المفرد)

• cloth

- In the past, **cloth** was made manually by weavers.

• clothes

ملابس (اسم جمع دائماً وليس له مفرد)

- Your **clothes** are fashionable, Ashraf.

earlier / ago

لاحظ الفرق بين (earlier) و (ago) :

منذ مدة معينة وحتى الآن

• ago

- I visited the pyramids **three months ago**. (قامت بالزيارة قبل الآن بثلاث شهور)

• earlier

منذ مدة معينة وحتى وقت معين في الماضي

- Last Friday, I found the money I lost **three months earlier**.

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

- **MRQ : Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :**

1. I don't know why she sad.
a. breaks b. makes c. tells d. looks e. is
2. The police are trying to the mystery of the crime.
a. have b. solve c. find a solution to
d. take e. do
3. He a lot of money as a doctor.
a. makes b. does c. is d. earns e. solves
4. When something is mysterious, it
a. is difficult to understand b. seems clear
c. is obvious d. is easy to understand
e. isn't clear
5. "Dinosaurs disappeared long ago." The word 'disappeared' here means
a. survived b. still exists c. no longer exist
d. died out e. exist
6. Mai Omar. They are going to get married.
a. is engaged to b. is engaged with
c. has got engaged to d. got engaged with
e. was married to
7. Although she has done nothing wrong, she
a. feels happy b. feels guilty
c. has a sense of guilt d. is surely guilty
e. looks pleased
8. He lives
a. alone b. lonely c. in a lonely house
d. a lone e. loneliness

- **MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. He first place and got the gold medal.
a. won b. felt c. did d. found
2. I need to some more practice.
a. win b. feel c. do d. break
3. She an argument with her sister.
a. had b. solved c. took d. did
4. The story you have us is very interesting, grandma.
a. broken b. made c. told d. looked
5. "This evidence proves that he is innocent." The verb 'proves' is the antonym of
a. approves b. improves c. disproves d. a & c

6. 'Innocent' is to '.....' as 'earlier' is to 'later'.
 a. late b. early c. kind d. guilty
7. The crime is still a and the criminal is still unknown.
 a. mysterious b. mystery c. guilt d. guilty
8. The crime is still and the criminal is still unknown.
 a. mysterious b. mystery c. guilt d. guilty
9. You should care of your appearance.
 a. get b. do c. make d. take
10. He is guilty robbing السطو على the bank.
 a. of b. to c. from d. with
11. Some important papers have disappeared the safe الخزينة.
 a. from b. of c. on d. at
12. She works
 a. hard b. hardly c. harden d. b & c
13. She is a worker.
 a. hard b. hardly c. harden d. b & c
14. She wastes any time.
 a. hard b. hardly c. harden d. b & c

PART III

READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

Silas Marner

Lesson 1 SB page 62

Silas Marner is a **weaver**⁽¹⁾ who lives in the **village**⁽²⁾ of Raveloe in England. The other people in the village aren't very **friendly**⁽³⁾ to Silas because he's new to the village and he lives **alone**⁽⁴⁾.



Fifteen years **earlier**⁽⁵⁾, Silas had been **engaged**⁽⁶⁾ to be married to a girl called Sarah. One day, while Silas was **taking care of**⁽⁷⁾ a friend who was sick, a bag of money **disappeared**⁽⁸⁾ from under the friend's bed. A man called William Dane finds the **empty**⁽⁹⁾ bag and Silas's friends decide that he is **guilty**⁽¹⁰⁾ of **stealing**⁽¹¹⁾ the money. Later, William marries Sarah **instead**⁽¹²⁾, and Silas decides to **move**⁽¹³⁾ to the village of Raveloe.

- (1) نساج / حائك
 (2) قرية
 (3) ودود
 (4) بمفرده
 (5) قبل ذلك
 (6) يخطب
 (7) يرعى
 (8) يختفي
 (9) فارغ
 (10) فذئب
 (11) سرقة
 (12) بدلاً من ذلك
 (13) يتنقل

3 Video script section

One hundred and sixty years ago, hard work would have looked very different for an **ordinary**⁽¹⁾ person. **Manual labour**⁽²⁾ could be very difficult; the **machinery**⁽³⁾ was often heavy and dangerous to **operate**⁽⁴⁾, and working **conditions**⁽⁵⁾ were not good.

Today, hard work can look very different. We are able to work more **efficiently**⁽⁶⁾ with the help of modern machinery and technology.

Modern workplaces are even using **artificial intelligence**⁽⁷⁾, so that computers can do much more work for us. The workplace is changing, and technology will continue to be part of the workplace of the future.

The question is : Are we still working hard or are computers doing all the work for us ?

- (1) عادي
- (2) العمل اليدوي
- (3) الآلات
- (4) يقوم بتشغيل
- (5) أحوال - ظروف
- (6) بكفاءة
- (7) الذكاء الاصطناعي

PART IV LANGUAGE

1 Present Deduction : الاستنتاج في المضارع :

1 للتعبير عن استنتاج قوي في المضارع نستخدم :

must + inf. لا يمكن / لابد

ex. - He has a villa and three cars. He **must be** rich. He **can't be** poor.

- تدل التعبيرات التالية على التأكد:

- I feel sure / certain أشعر بالتأكد
- certainly / surely / definitely من المؤكد
- impossible مستحيل

ex. - It is impossible that he has left home. He **must be** at home. He **can't be** outdoors.

2 تُستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن استنتاج ضعيف في المضارع (عدم تأكد أو عدم معرفة أو عدم اعتقاد):

may + inf. من الممكن / من المحتمل

- I don't know where Sama is now. She **may be** at home. She **might be** out.

- تدل التعبيرات التالية على عدم التأكد:

- I'm not sure / not certain لست متأكد
- perhaps / Maybe ربما
- It is probable / likely / possible من المحتمل
- I don't know لست أدري
- I don't think / believe لا أظن
- I'm not sure what is wrong with Ahmed. He **may / might be** ill.

٢ لعمل استنتاج عن حدث مستمر في المضارع نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

must / can't / may / might + be + (inf.+ing)

- ex. - A: Why doesn't Amr answer the phone?
- B: I don't know. He **might be** having a shower.

2

Past Deduction :

الاستنتاج في الماضي :

١ للتعبير عن استنتاج قوى في الماضي نستخدم:

must لابد / can't لا يمكن + have + p.p.

- ex. - Abdu looked very happy after the exam. He **must have** done well.
- He was in London last Thursday. He **can't have** attended the meeting in Cairo that day.

٢ نستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن استنتاج ضعيف في الماضي (عدم تأكد أو عدم معرفة أو عدم اعتقاد):

may من المحتمل / might من الممكن + have + p.p.

- ex. - I have no idea why he was so sad. He **may / might have** heard some bad news.

٢ لعمل استنتاج عن حدث كان مستمرًا في الماضي نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

must / can't / may / might + have been + inf.+ing

- ex. - A: I phoned him three times this morning, but there was no answer.
- B: I don't know why, but he **might have been** sleeping.

Extra Notes

should / shouldn't

٤ نستخدم (**should / shouldn't + have + p.p.**) للتعبير عن الانتقاد أو اللوم على موقف أو حدث وقع في الماضي :

- ex. - You **should have** arrived a bit earlier. The manager was very angry.
- You **shouldn't have** shouted at your sister like that. She cried a lot.

General Exercise On Language

● Apply

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- She didn't take her handbag home with her. She in a hurry.
a. must have been b. can't have been c. can't be d. could be
- Ahmed has just injured his leg while riding a bike. He have fallen off.
a. should b. might c. can't d. must

- UNIT TWELVE : Hard work 247



PART I VOCABULARY

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

character(n)	شخصية	page-turner(n)	كتاب شيق / مثير
novel(n)	رواية	plot(n)	خبكة (رواية / مسرحية ...)
pace(n)	وتيرة الأحداث	theme(n)	موضوع / الفكرة الرئيسية

2 Important Vocabulary المفردات الهامة

abandon(ed) (v)	يُهجّر - يترك	laugh(ed) (v)	يضحك
abandoned(adj)	مهجور	legend(n)	أسطورة
across(adv)	عبر	lie(d) (v)	يقع - يوجد
adopt(ed) (v)	يتبنى	lonely(adj)	وحيد - منعزل
archaeologist(n)	عالم آثار	monster(n)	وَحْش
around (adv. - prep.)	حول - حوالى	pharaoh(n)	فراعون
bear(n)	ذُب	pirate(n)	قراصن
bury(ied) (v)	يدفن	puzzle(n)	لغز
close(adj)	قريب	recommend(ed) (v)	يُخبّذ - يوصي بـ
coast(n)	ساحل	shape(n)	شكل
crime(n)	جريمة	stone(n)	حصاة - حجر
deep(adj)	عميق	then(adv)	حينئذ - آنذاك
distant(adj)	بعيد	traditional(adj)	تقليدي
divide(d) (v)	يُقسّم - ينقسم	unusual(adj)	غير مالوف
equally(adv)	بالتساوي	warehouse(n)	مُخزّن / مُستودع
lake(n)	بحيرة		

3 Definitions التعريفات

Memorise	Understand
character(n) شخصية	a person in a story
pace(n) وتيرة الأحداث	how quickly things seem to happen in a story
page-turner(n)	a very exciting book
plot(n) خبكة (رواية / مسرحية ...)	what happens in a story

theme(n) الموضوع / الفكرة الرئيسية	the main subject or idea in a book
novel(n) رواية	a long written story in which the characters and events أحداث are usually imaginary خيالي

Exercise On Vocabulary

• Understand

- Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Key vocabulary

- In modern life, the of change is very fast.
a. pace b. warehouse c. community d. souvenir
- The of this film is boring, but the music is fantastic.
a. director b. actor c. plot d. name
- You won't be able to put such a down until you have finished it.
a. page-turner b. pacemaker c. weaver d. villager
- This story has a good It is the value of cooperation and teamwork.
a. shape b. solution c. village d. theme
- Jim Hawkins is the main in Treasure Island.
a. monster b. page turner c. weaver d. character
- "Treasure Island" is an exciting I enjoyed reading it.
a. character b. novel c. game d. cottage

2 Important Vocabulary

- Some attacked the ship and stole a treasure from it. (الغالبات ٢٠٢٣)
a. pilots b. pirates c. pioneers d. parents
- An honest manager should deal with his employees , (المرح ٢٠٢٣)
a. locally b. particularly c. equally d. orally
- I that you do this job because I trust you.
a. solve b. disappear c. recommend d. prove
- He his village and moved to Alexandria.
a. adopted b. abandoned c. hid d. called
- You can store the amount of goods you need at this ,
a. workhouse b. farmhouse c. warehouse d. fashion house
- This is an ancient that has never happened.
a. reality b. truth c. fact d. legend
- Some Indians do not the dead. They burn them instead.
a. pace b. engage c. earn d. bury

14. What you say is a/an I really find it difficult to understand.
a. event b. community c. puzzle d. shape
15. I thought he lived to his family, but actually he moved to a faraway town.
a. far b. remote c. close d. distant
16. She lives in a village. It takes long hours to reach it.
a. traditional b. guilty c. distant d. lonely
17. I apologise for not answering your call. I was taking a shower
a. now b. currently c. then d. yet
18. The person who killed this child is a, not a human.
a. whole b. monster c. village d. mystery
19. The manager liked my suggestion, so he it.
a. adopted b. cheered c. divided d. laughed
20. An apple is round in
a. community b. event c. puzzle d. shape

3 Definitions

21. A/An is a long written story.
a. novel b. poem c. article d. theme
22. A is a person in a book, play, film etc.
a. mystery b. character c. weaver d. page-turner
23. is how quickly things seem to happen in a story.
a. Plot b. Theme c. Pace d. Solution
24. A is a book that is so exciting that you want to read it quickly.
a. mystery b. character c. weaver d. page-turner
25. A is the events that form the main story of a book, film, or play.
a. plot b. theme c. solution d. pace
26. A/An is the main subject or idea in a book.
a. novel b. poem c. article d. theme

PART II VOCABULARY STUDY

1 Verbal Collocations المتلازمات اللفظية

break	a rule / law	يخالف اللوائح / القانون	make	notes	يُدوّن ملاحظات
find	happiness	يجد السعادة	take	photos of	يلتقط صور لـ
go	wrong	يُخطئ - يتعطل		place	يُحدّث

2 Synonyms المترادفات

Word	Synonym (= Meaning)
abandoned	مهجور
close	قريب
ensure	يضمن
then	حينئذ - آنذاك
	deserted
	distant, faraway
	make sure, make certain, guarantee
	at that (time, point, moment), on that occasion

3 Derivatives of key vocabulary مشتقات المفردات الرئيسية

abandon		
abandon(v)	يهجر - يترك	- They have abandoned their family house.
abandoned(adj)	مهجور - متروك	- Their family house is abandoned.
village		
village(n)	قرية	- I come from a small village.
villager(n)	قروي	- I am a villager.

4 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

as long as	في نفس طول - طالما	it is beautiful to read	من الجميل قراءتها
BCE = Before Common Era		keep ... for themselves	يحتفظون بـ ... لأنفسهم
	قبل الميلاد		
be gone	يضيع - يتوه	live on a farm	يعيش في مزرعة
find an answer to	يجد حلًا لـ	nobody knows	لا أحد يعلم
full of surprises	مليء بالمفاجآت	rather than	بدلاً من
good at his job	يُجيد عمله	share it equally	يتقاسمونه بالتساوي
in answer to	لحل - كحل لـ - ردًا على	work better as	يعمل بشكل أفضل كـ

5 Verb + Preposition فعل + حرف جر

agree to	يوافق على / أن	grow up	يُكبر - يتعرع
ask for	يطلب من	know about	يعرف عن
belong to	ينتمي إلى - يخص	look like	يُشبه - يبدو مثل
bring ... back	يُعيد	recommend ... to	يوصي بـ / يُرشح ... لـ
drive across	يقود عبر	seem to	يبدو أن
feel like	يشعر وكأنه - يرغب أن	take ... to	يأخذ ... إلى
go back	يعود - يرجع	try to	يحاول أن

6 Clear the confusion لاحظ الفرق

alone / lonely

لاحظ الفرق بين (alone) و (lonely) :

- تُستخدم (alone) كظرف (adv) بمعنى (بمفرده / دون مساعدة أو مشاركة من أحد)
- She did the housework alone.
- تُستخدم (alone) كصفة (adj) بمعنى (وحيد / ليس معه أحد) ولا تأتي قبل الموصوف
- She was alone when the thieves attacked her.
- تُستخدم (lonely) كصفة (adj) بمعنى (فنعزل / شاعر بالوحدة) ولا تُستخدم كظرف
- She was a lonely woman with no one to look after her.
- They live in a lonely farmhouse.

General Exercise On Vocabulary Study

- ☆ MRQ : Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. He is in prison because he has broken
a. a rule b. research c. a sport
d. a story e. the law
2. When something is distant, it is
a. close b. nearby c. distance
d. faraway e. a long distance away
3. A book which you like very much to read is
a. a page-turner b. interesting c. interested
d. excited e. boring
4. "I will do this as long as you want me to do it." 'As long as' here can be replaced by
a. if b. when c. unless
d. if not e. without

- ☆ MCQ : Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. She was sad in the party, she felt (بولاق ٢٣ ٢٠)
a. once b. alone c. lonely d. one
2. Finally, she got married and happiness in her new life.
a. won b. broke c. done d. found
3. The photo you have is great.
a. broken b. solved c. taken d. done
4. While he was talking, I some notes.
a. broke b. made c. told d. looked

5. Something wrong and the car stopped.
 a. went b. made c. took d. did
6. "He abandoned his family." Which of the following is a synonym of the verb 'abandoned'?
 a. joined b. deserted c. vanished d. survived
7. We all agree that most are simple and kind.
 a. weave b. weavers c. villages d. villagers
8. People no longer live in that area.
 a. confuse b. confused c. abandon d. abandoned
9. I agree what you have said.
 a. at b. to c. by d. from
10. In answer your question, Salah deserves the 'Man of the Match' award.
 a. of b. with c. to d. about
11. My grandfather lives
 a. a lone b. lone c. lonely d. alone
12. My grandfather has a life.
 a. a lone b. lone c. lonely d. alone

PART III READING & LISTENING

1 Reading Texts

Lesson 3 SB page 66

Reviews of Silas Marner Which reader liked the book more?

1. Ismail

I had to read Silas Marner when I was at school and I didn't enjoy it very much **then**.⁽¹⁾ However, I've just finished reading it again and I liked it a lot more.

It's a long book, although it isn't as long as Eliot's other books. The **pace**⁽²⁾ was quite fast and the **plot**⁽³⁾ is full of surprises. I couldn't stop reading because I really wanted to know what was going to happen to these **wonderful**⁽⁴⁾ characters. I would **recommend**⁽⁵⁾ this book to anyone who enjoys **mystery**⁽⁶⁾ stories.

- (1) حينئذ - آنذاك
 (2) وتيرة الأحداث
 (3) خطة
 (4) رائع
 (5) يُنصَح - يوصي بـ
 (6) لغز - سير غامض

Girl : This book is very **funny**⁽⁵⁾! It is about a family who drive **across**⁽⁶⁾ **the country**⁽⁷⁾ for a holiday. They have to return their car to the airport before the end of the day. The plot is full of things that **go wrong**⁽⁸⁾! The car is stopped by a **bear**⁽⁹⁾, and they meet a lot of **strange**⁽¹⁰⁾ people. My **favourite**⁽¹¹⁾ character is a **police officer**⁽¹²⁾ who is not very good at his job! I **laughed**⁽¹³⁾ a lot and would recommend this book.

- (5) مُضجك
(6) غَير
(7) الريف
(8) تسير الأمور بشكل خاطئ
(9) دَبْ
(10) غريب
(11) مُفضَّل
(12) ضابط شرطة
(13) يضحك

PART IV LANGUAGE

تنويه راجع القاعدة من الدرسين الأول والثاني.

General Exercise On Language

● Apply

- ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1 Getting started: Check what you have learnt

- Ali injured. There is blood on his face.
a. must be b. must have c. can't have been d. a & b
- Ali injured. There was blood on his face.
a. must be b. must have been c. can't have been d. a & b
- Hana is in a very difficult situation. It easy for her.
a. might have been b. might be c. can't have been d. can't be
- Hana was in a very difficult situation. It easy for her.
a. might have been b. might be c. can't have been d. can't be
- You've been travelling all day. You be very tired.
a. can't b. may c. might d. must
- You've been travelling all day. You be relaxed.
a. can't b. may c. might d. must
- He be French, but I am not sure.
a. must b. might c. can't d. will
- The criminal must have by the police.
a. arrested b. be arrested
c. been arrested d. being arrested

9. Mona has a fever. She ill.
 a. may be b. can't be c. should be d. must be
10. They are all wearing coats, so it cold when they took the photograph.
 a. must be b. can be
 c. must have been d. can't have been
11. He looks very sad. He the race.
 a. must have won b. can't have won
 c. might win d. must win
12. You look sleepy. You had enough sleep last night.
 a. might have b. must have c. can't have d. may have
13. I've lost one of my keys. I have dropped them somewhere.
 a. can't b. must c. may d. might
14. They haven't lived here for long. They know all their neighbours well.
 a. must b. may c. can't d. might
15. Sama rang but I didn't hear the phone. It have been silent.
 a. must b. can't c. should d. may
16. That restaurant be very good. It's always full of people.
 a. must b. may c. can't d. might

2 Special cases

17. She isn't here. She home to study for tomorrow's test.
 a. can't have gone b. must have gone c. can't go d. must go
18. **A:** Do you know if he is OK after the accident?
B: I'm not sure, but he his arm.
 a. might break b. can't have broken
 c. may have broken d. must have broken
19. **A:** Where is Ahmed, mum?
B: He at school. He comes back at two, so he will be back in ten minutes.
 a. may be b. must be c. can't be d. is
20. Be careful of that large dog. It you.
 a. might bite b. can't bite c. must bite d. should bite
21. I explained it, but she have understood. My French is very bad.
 a. can't b. can c. must d. shouldn't
22. I didn't know you were going to Rodayna's wedding yesterday. You have told me!
 a. must b. should c. might d. shouldn't

23. I'm glad you survived. You risked your life and killed.
a. may have b. must have been c. could have been d. might have
24. She have misunderstood my directions. Why else is she late?
a. must b. can't c. should d. could
25. I have written down the number incorrectly. I've just called a hospital not the restaurant.
a. might b. may c. must d. can't
26. They got there already. They only left ten minutes ago.
a. can't b. must c. must have d. can't have
27. A: Ali must have left hospital.
B: He My uncle is visiting him there now.
a. did b. does c. didn't d. doesn't
28. They have got in through the window - It's on the 21st floor!
a. might b. can c. can't d. must
29. This our train. It is too early.
a. must have been b. can't have been c. must be d. can't be

3 Check your understanding

30. "It is not possible that he caught the bus." What does this mean?
a. He might catch the bus. b. He might not catch the bus.
c. He can't have caught the bus. d. He might not have caught the bus.
31. "It was impossible that he didn't hear the news." This means
a. he can't hear the news b. he can't have heard the news
c. he must hear the news d. he must have heard the news
32. It took her a long time to solve the problem. I think
a. it might be difficult for her b. it must be difficult for her
c. it must have been difficult for her d. it must have been easy for her
33. "That house was almost certainly built a few years ago." This means
a. it must build a few years ago
b. it must have built a few years ago
c. it must have been built a few years ago
d. it must be built a few years ago
34. "I'm quite sure he didn't rob the bank." What does this mean?
a. He needn't have robbed the bank. b. He mustn't have robbed the bank.
c. He can't rob the bank. d. He can't have robbed the bank.



PART I GRAMMATICAL HINTS

look angrily / look angry

١ لاحظ الفرق بين (look angrily) و (look angry) :

- She looked angry after the meeting. كانت تبدو غاضبة.
- She looked angrily at me. كانت تنظر بغضب.

as long as

٢ لاحظ الفرق في استخدام (as long as) :

- as long as في نفس طول
- It's a long book, although it isn't as long as Mahfouz's other books.
- as long as طالما - ما دام
- I will work with you as long as you pay me enough money.

what

٣ لاحظ عبارات الوصل التي تبدأ ب (what) :

- what = the thing that / the things that
- يمكن أن تستخدم (what) كضمير وصل وهي لا تعود على اسم محدد وتكون عبارة الوصل كلها إما فاعل أو مفعول أو مجرور:
- What you do will affect your position. (فاعل)
- I didn't understand what he said. (مفعول)
- She listened to what the teacher said. (مجرور)

all

٤ لاحظ استخدام (all) كضمير بمعنى (كل / كل شيء / كل ما) :

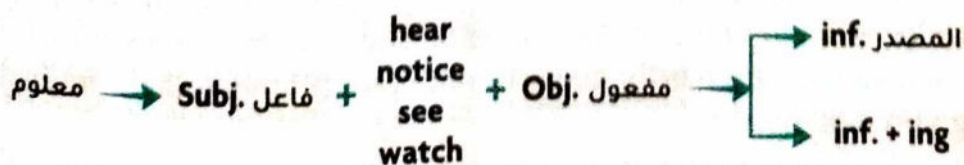
- All he wants to do is to earn enough money.

whole

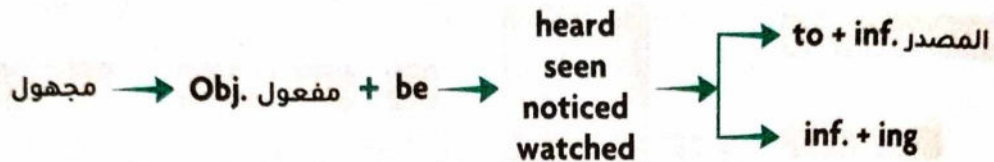
٥ لاحظ استخدام (whole) كصفة بمعنى (كله / بأكمله) :

- The whole trip was exciting.
- I spent the whole day working in the garden.

٦ لاحظ أفعال الإدراك التالية وطريقة بنائها للمجهول :



- I saw him take / taking the money.
- I hear a bird sing / singing.



- He was seen to take / taking the money. - A bird is heard to sing / singing.

Exercise On Language Hints

★ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- My brother looked after the match.
 a. anger b. angry c. angrily d. b & c
- The coach looked at the careless goalkeeper.
 a. anger b. angry c. angrily d. b & c
- She agreed to I had said.
 a. where b. when c. who d. what
- is well that ends well.
 a. All b. Both c. All of d. Both of
- We spent the day on the beach.
 a. all b. whole c. each d. every
- I saw Omar the street.
 a. cross b. crossing c. to cross d. a & b
- Omar was seen the street.
 a. cross b. to crossing c. to cross d. a & b

PART II LANGUAGE SKILLS

1 Reading

★ Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

(بلفاس ٢٠٢٣)

I have believed for a while that mobiles are harmful to our health, due to the exposure of radiation. Scientists think that mobile phones should be used as little as possible. A lot of scientists believe they are harmful to your health. Mobile phones are particularly bad for children. The phone companies will tell you that they are safe. But remember they are selling a product, so they are hardly going to put you off buying their product by telling you it is unsafe.

After all, people said that smoking, pesticides and so on were either safe or wouldn't cause you serious harm. However, they were wrong as they caused cancer, disability and terrible illnesses. In fact, research claims

Wireless (Wi-Fi) can cause headaches, nausea, tiredness and memory loss in some people. We have so much technology now. There is 24-hour television, computers, phones and so on. Electrical gadgets in the bedroom can also cause sleep problems. But if you can't do without **them**, at least make sure you don't have a computer, wireless phone or mobile in your bedroom or at least make sure that they are turned off. Cordless phones emit a high amount of radiation. So, keep your technology use to a limited amount of time each day. Mobile phones can cause cancerous brain tumours if they are used for a long period of time over the years. Always remember that your health is very important as you might find you are unable to return to good health once you have lost it.

1. What do the phone companies tell us about mobile phones?
 - a. They are safe.
 - b. They are expensive.
 - c. They are dangerous.
 - d. They are terrifying.
2. Who are most affected by using mobile phones?
 - a. Mobile companies
 - b. Workers
 - c. Children
 - d. Adults
3. What does new research show?
 - a. Smoking is as dangerous as mobile phones.
 - b. Smoking is more dangerous than mobile phones.
 - c. Smoking and mobile phones are safe.
 - d. Mobile phones are more dangerous than smoking.
4. What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to?
 - a. Mobile phones
 - b. Cordless phones
 - c. Computers
 - d. Electrical gadgets
5. What's the author's opinion about the use of technology?
 - a. To use technology as much as we can.
 - b. To keep technology use to a limited amount of time.
 - c. Not to use technology at all as it is harmful.
 - d. To use technology in our institutions only.
6. Which piece of advice does the author give at the end of the text?
 - a. To buy more mobiles.
 - b. To leave technology as it causes many problems.
 - c. To be careful about our health.
 - d. To trust what companies say about their products.
7. What is the best title to the passage?
 - a. Mobile phones cure diseases.
 - b. Mobile phones; a way to death.
 - c. Smoking is harmful.
 - d. The phone companies tell the truth.

2 Review Writing الكتابة العروض النقدية

كيف تكتب عرض نقدي (Review) لرواية / قصة / فيلم / مسرحية؟

١ ابدأ بفقرة قصيرة عن القصة / الرواية / الفيلم / المسرحية ككل، ويمكنك الاستعانة بالأفكار التالية:

- I am going to write about a book / novel / story / film / play called
- It was written / starred / directed by

٢ اكتب فقرتين منفصلتين إحداهما عما أعجبك والأخرى عما لم يُعجبك، وفي هاتين الفقرتين يمكن مناقشة العناصر الرئيسية وهي:

• Setting

مكان وزمان الأحداث

- The incidents of this novel / story / film / play take place in

• Characters

الشخصيات

- The main character is
- The other characters are

• Plot

الحبكة

- The events start when
- The climax is when

• Theme

الموضوع

- The theme of the book / novel / story / film / play is about

• Pace

وتيرة الأحداث

- The pace of events in the novel / story / film / play is (fast / slow)

• Style

الأسلوب

- The style of the writer is (simple / complicated ...etc.)

٣ اكتب فقرة ختامية عن رأيك وهل توصي (بهذه) الرواية / القصة / المسرحية / الفيلم أم لا:

- Finally, I think this book / novel / story / film / play is
- I really recommend / don't recommend

3 Translation الترجمة

1. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

1. Some romantic stories make us forget about our worries and troubles.

They take us to the world of imagination, dreams and thinking. (منيا القمح ٢٠٢٣)

- a. بعض القصص الرومانسية تجعلنا ننسى همومنا ومتاعبنا حيث تأخذنا إلى عالم الخيال والأحلام والتفكير.
- b. بعض القصص الرومانسية تجعلنا ننسى همومنا ومتاعبنا حيث تأخذنا إلى عالم الخيال والأحلام والتفكير.
- c. بعض القصص الرومانسية تجعلنا ننسى همومنا ومتاعبنا حيث تأخذنا إلى عالم الخيال والأحلام والتفكير.
- d. بعض القصص البوليسية تجعلنا ننسى همومنا ومتاعبنا حيث تأخذنا إلى عالم الخيال والأحلام والتفكير.

2. Water is the spirit for all creatures. So, we must rationalise its consumption in order not to regret in the future.

(القرين ٢٠٢٣)

- a. يُمثل الماء الروح لكل العالم لذلك يجب أن نُرشد استهلاكنا لكي لا نندم في المستقبل.
b. يُمثل الماء الروح لبعض المخلوقات لذلك يجب أن نُرشد استهلاكنا لكي لا نندم في المستقبل.
c. يُمثل الماء الروح لكل المخلوقات لذلك يجب أن نُرشد استهلاكنا لكي لا نندم في المستقبل.
d. يُمثل الماء الروح لكل المخلوقات لذلك يجب أن نُرشد إنتاجنا منه لكي لا نندم في المستقبل.

2. Choose the correct English translation from a , b , c or d :

ا. من أجل تخفيض الأسعار لابد أن تقف كل من الحكومة وكذلك المواطنين جنباً إلى جنب لمكافحة استغلال التجار الجشعين.
(دمياط ٢٠٢٣)

- a. To decrease prices, both the government and citizens should stand for facing the exploitation of greedy traders.
b. To decrease prices, both the government and citizens should stand side by side to face the exploitation of greedy traders.
c. To decrease prices, both the government and citizens should stand side by side for the exploitation of those very greedy traders.
d. To decrease prices, both the government and citizens should stand side by side to face the exploitation of those traders.

ف. تشتهر مصر بقطنها الممتاز لذلك تسعى العديد من الدول لشراؤه لصناعة أجود الملابس وأشياء أخرى.
(القرين ٢٠٢٣)

- a. Egypt is famous for its excellent cotton, so many countries seek to buy it for making the best clothes and other things.
b. Egypt is famous for its excellent cotton, so many countries seek to sell it for making the best clothes and other things.
c. Egypt is famous for its excellent cotton, so no countries seek to buy it for making clothes and other things.
d. Egypt is famous for its excellent cotton, so many countries seek to leave it for making clothes and other things.

PART III

JUST FOR ADVANCED LEVEL

للفائقين فقط

guilty

• guilt (at / about / over) (n)

- He had a feeling of guilt about not looking after his family.

الجزلي - العار

دنب / خطيئة

• guilt (n)

- He felt sorry for his guilt.

مذنب (ب)

• guilty (of) (adj)

- He was guilty of stealing.

لاحظ الفرق بين:

• **guilty (about/for/at)**

شاعر بالجزي أو العار مما فعله

- I felt guilty about not lending him the money he wanted.

• **guilty (of)**

مُذنب (ب)

- They were guilty of robbing the bank.

• **guilty-ridden (adj)**

يتملكه الشعور بالذنب

- I don't know why you are guilty-ridden. You are not responsible for what happened.

mystery• **mystery = detective story (n)**

رواية بوليسية / فيلم بوليسي

- I like reading mysteries.

• **mystery (n)**

لُغز / سر غامض / مُغضلة

- The crime is still a mystery. The police haven't solved it.

لاحظ المتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

- be / remain a mystery لُغزًا / يكون / solve a mystery يكشف غموض اللغز

• **mystery (adj)**

غير مفهوم / غامض (لاحظ أن هذه الصفة تُستخدم قبل الاسم فقط)

- I don't trust that man who looks mystery. (✗)
- I don't trust that mystery man. (✓)

• **mysterious (adj)**

غير مفهوم / غامض

- I don't trust that man who looks mysterious. (✓)
- I don't trust that mysterious man. (✓)

pace• **pace (n)**

شُرعة الشَّير

- The soldiers' pace was fast.

• **pace (n)**

خطوة

- Walk ten paces and turn right.

• **pace (n)**

سرعة - وتيرة (الأحداث)

- The pace of change in modern world is getting faster.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية:

- at your own pace بالسرعة التي تناسبك
- the pace of change معدل سرعة التغيير
- the pace of development / reform وتيرة التطور / الإصلاح

• **pacemaker (n)**

منظم ضربات القلب

- The doctor said my grandfather needed a pacemaker.

plot• **plot (n)**

حبكة الرواية أو الفيلم (الأحداث)

- The plot of the film was exciting.

• **plot (n)**

قطعة أرض (مساحة صغيرة)

- I have a small vegetable plot.

• **plot (n)**

مدفن العائلة

- My grandfather bought this plot a short time before his death.

• **plot (against) (n)**

مؤامرة / مكيدة (ضد)

- There was a plot against the company to make it lose a lot of money.

• **plot (against / to) (v)**

يتآمر (ضد)

- He plotted to steal the safe خزانة of the supermarket.

- They plotted against their manager.

weave

• **weave - wove - woven (v)**

ينسج

- In our family, only my mother can weave.

• **weave - wove - woven (v)**

يُدَبِّر - يحبك (رواية / قصة...)

- Naguib Mahfouz wove the plot of this novel professionally.

• **weaver (n)**

نَسَّاج

- The job of weavers nearly disappeared because machines now do all the work.

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Your grandfather is buried here, in our
a. legend b. turner c. plot d. monster
2. The of change in science and technology is very fast.
a. weaver b. guilt c. mystery d. pace
3. I like this story because the plot is cleverly-
a. woven b. abandoned c. buried d. earned
4. I can't trust a man who has against his brother.
a. supported b. plotted c. hid d. ensured
5. Let children learn their own pace.
a. in b. on c. at d. out

Advanced Exercise on Language

مجاب عنه في نهاية الكتاب

• ☆ Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He be joking. It is impossible for him to run as fast as a horse.
a. would b. must c. should d. can't
2. She been looking where she was walking. She walked straight into a wall.
a. must have b. can't c. couldn't have d. b & c
3. Your jeans be costly. They're old-fashioned.
a. can't b. might c. must d. may
4. She is famous for her wit. She be a fool.
a. might b. mustn't c. must d. can't
5. Why didn't you apply for the job? - You have got it.
a. must b. could c. can d. couldn't

Test on Unit 12

• Understand

• Apply

• Create

تدوينة

التقييمات
الشهرية في
نهاية الكتاب



اختبار الكتروني

1. Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

- This is the only room available. The antonyms of "available" is
a. busy b. obtainable c. engaged
d. accessible e. free
(ادفو ٢٠٢٣)
- I prefer using a pen and paper to notes while my teachers are explaining the lessons.
a. do b. miss c. ignore
d. make e. take
(إيتاي البارود ٢٠٢٣)

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

- My sister is to a police officer. Their wedding is next Friday.
a. married b. evacuated c. achieved d. engaged
(منوف ٢٠٢٣)
- He is really , he did many bad things against the law.
a. guilt b. guiltless c. guilty d. guiltlessness
(جهينة ٢٠٢٣)
- I still don't know what happened to my car. It's a
a. guilty b. criminal c. mystery d. plot
(منطقة البحيرة الأزهرية - علمي ٢٠٢٣)
- To is to become impossible to find.
a. solve b. disappear c. guilt d. engage
(منطقة البحيرة الأزهرية - علمي ٢٠٢٣)
- Artificial will play a more important role in the future.
a. Review b. Machinery c. Cloth d. Intelligence
- He didn't go to prison because his lawyer that he was not guilty.
a. refused b. denied c. proved d. disproved
- I apologise for not answering your call. I was taking a shower
a. now b. currently c. then d. yet
- A: Where's the cat? B: It out; the door is closed.
a. must have gone b. can't have gone
c. could go d. may have gone
(الزيتون ٢٠٢٣)
- The players are all very happy. They have won the match.
a. can't b. might c. must d. mustn't
(كفر الدوار ٢٠٢٣)
- I don't know where Lina is. She have gone to the sports centre.
a. can b. shouldn't c. might d. mustn't
(منطقة البحيرة الأزهرية - علمي ٢٠٢٣)
- That be my book. I have my one in my bag.
a. must b. can c. can't d. doesn't
(منطقة البحيرة الأزهرية - أدبي ٢٠٢٣)
- He have rung yesterday evening, but I'm not sure.
a. must b. can c. might d. will
(أبو قرقاص ٢٠٢٣)

13. You have done all the housework alone. You be dead tired. (بولاق ٢٠٢٣)
 a. might b. can't c. must d. will
14. Hana was in a very difficult situation. It easy for her.
 a. might have been b. might be c. can't have been d. can't be

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

(شبرا ٢٠٢٣)

Have you eaten ice cream on a hot day and suddenly felt a sharp pain in your head? If so, you had a very common experience that some people call a "brain freeze".

Brain freezes are caused when cold food or drink touches the roof of your mouth. Nerves in your mouth send a signal to your brain. Your brain then turns the signal into sharp pain. However, the pain doesn't go to your mouth where the cold is. It stays in your head.

Most brain freezes last for less than 30 seconds. But if you want to make it go away quicker, you can try a couple of tricks. When you start to get a brain freeze, push your tongue against the roof of your mouth. This sometimes warms up your mouth so that the nerves don't send the signal that causes a headache. You can also try preventing brain freeze from the start by eating and drinking more slowly. If you take smaller bites or sips, your mouth won't get so cold.

Brain freezes also occur when we have to present or perform in front of others. This is called "stage fright". If you want to cure stage fright, and avoid this kind of brain freezes, prepare for both what you're going to say and how you're going to say it.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

- According to the passage, which of these is a way to cure a brain freeze?
 a. Putting something warm on your tongue.
 b. Placing your tongue in the roof of your mouth.
 c. Eating cold things more quickly.
 d. Eating warm and cold foods together.
- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the
 a. brain b. cold c. mouth d. pain
- Why does eating or drinking slowly help prevent brain freezes?
 a. Your mouth does not get so cold.
 b. Your brain cannot recognize what you are eating or drinking.
 c. The thing you are eating or drinking does not touch your tongue.
 d. The brain freeze does not last as long.
- Most brain freezes usually take
 a. a very short time b. a very long time
 c. half an hour d. three minutes
- What causes a brain freeze?
 a. Eating too much ice cream or cold food.
 b. Eating something cold and then something warm.
 c. Cold food or drink touching the roof of your mouth.
 d. Eating cold food on very hot days.

6. Which of these would probably NOT cause a brain freeze'?

- a. Drinking a glass of cold soda quickly.
- b. Eating an ice cream cone quickly before it melts.
- c. Chewing a lot of ice.
- d. Slowly sipping a glass of iced tea.

7. The author of the passage mentioned of brain freezes.

- a. one cause
- b. several causes
- c. two causes
- d. three causes

4. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

Artificial intelligence is considered the next revolution in the next few years.

(الهامول ٢٠٢٣)

- a. يُعتبر الذكاء الاصطناعي هو الثورة المقبلة في السنوات القليلة القادمة.
- b. يُعتبر الذكاء الصناعي هو مستقبل البلاد القادم في السنوات القليلة القادمة.
- c. يُعتبر الذكاء الاصطناعي هو الثورة الحالية في شتي المجالات.
- d. يُعتبر الذكاء الاصطناعي هو الثورة المقبلة في العالم في السنوات القليلة القادمة.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

أصبح العالم أكثر ترابطاً بفضل التقدم الهائل في وسائل الاتصالات، فلم يعد ممكناً لأي دولة أن تعزل عن الأخرى.

(المنيا ٢٠٢٣)

- a. The world became more linked due to the enormous progress in the means of communication. No country can be isolated from other countries anymore.
- b. The world became the most linked due to the enormous progress in the means of communication. No country can be isolated from other countries anymore.
- c. The world became more linked due to the progress in the means of communication. No country can be isolated from countries anymore.
- d. The world became more linked due to the enormous progress in the means of communication. No one can be isolated from other countries anymore.

5. Answer the following questions:

1. If you were Jim, how would you feel while staying with the pirates ?

2. Why do you think Silver gave Jim a gun ?

3. Were you surprised when Silver escaped from the boat ? Why ?

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:

“Hard work”

Monthly assessments

تقييمات شهرية

1. February test اختبار فبراير

1. Choose the TWO(2) correct answers out of the FIVE(5) options given :

1. When a place is messy, it is
a. ordered b. disordered c. orderly
d. tidy e. untidy
2. A hybrid car has
a. two wings b. a petrol engine c. the ability to fly
d. three wheels e. an electric motor

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Please, open the door. It is so airless in here. I can hardly
a. research b. breathe c. breath d. search
2. The pilot of the plane was forced to make a/an landing as one of the engines had broken down.
a. blanket b. immediately c. emergency d. evacuation
3. My wife is used to the chicken in foil before cooking it.
a. responding b. wrapping c. breathing d. feeding
4. Parents must care much about their children's personal
a. evacuation b. emergency c. hygiene d. allergy
5. When the car went past us, a cloud of rose in the air.
a. soil b. dust c. rain d. bin
6. Today, in car factories, can replace production workers.
a. robots b. inventions c. vehicles d. rumours
7. Living things usually to the changes in their environment.
a. chop b. breathe c. burn d. respond
8. If a volcano erupts, it dust into the atmosphere.
a. send b. sends c. would send d. doesn't send
9. It is extremely warm in here. We better open some windows.
a. had b. should c. ought to d. must
10. This library book is overdue. I return it today. It is necessary to do that.
a. should b. shouldn't c. mustn't d. must
11. I wish I were in India, I would visit the Taj Mahal. But I there now.
a. am b. were c. am not d. weren't
12. If you let me know when your computer comes, I you connect it.
a. help b. helped c. will help d. would help

13. You smoke in hospitals. It is forbidden.
 a. must b. mustn't c. shouldn't d. should
14. I'm catching an early flight tomorrow, so I stay up late.
 a. should b. must c. mustn't d. need to

3. **Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Have you ever imagined life without cell phones? People who are fifty or more will find this question surprising as they used to live without mobile phones. Younger generations, on the other hand, think that they cannot do without mobile phones.

If someone had said 50 years ago that people would be walking around with small wireless telephones in their hands, we would have called him or her mad. However, almost everyone now has at least one of them.

People everywhere are walking around talking on their mobile phones. The phones are even being used for more than just communication. People use them for **numerous** purposes. Mobile phones are used to play games, watch films, listen to music, pay money online, and find information. They have become a very important part of our lives.

Mobile phones have not only made our lives more **convenient**, but they have changed the way we live. Before we had mobile phones, it was hard to reach a friend that was away from home. But thanks to these small devices, people can now get in touch with anyone, at any place, and at any time. To conclude, they have made us reachable wherever we are and whenever anyone likes.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. What can we not use mobile phone for?
 a. Playing games. b. Getting information.
 c. Washing our faces. d. Listening to music.
2. About fifty years ago, we
 a. did not have mobiles b. had mobile phones
 c. used mobiles d. were mad
3. Thanks to mobile phones,
 a. we cannot find information b. our lives are shorter
 c. it is harder to reach a friend d. our lives are easier
4. The antonym of the underlined word "**convenient**" is.....
 a. improper b. proper c. suitable d. available
5. The summary of the last paragraph is
 a. the disadvantages of cell phones b. the advantages of cell phones
 c. decreasing the use of cell phones d. improving of cell phones

6. The adjective “numerous” can be replaced with
 a. many b. little c. few d. small
7. The best title for the passage can be “ ”.
 a. Technology b. Watching films
 c. Cell phones d. Playing games

4. a. **Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:**

Leaders from around the world gathered to discuss solutions to the climate change and global warming in an international conference known as COP27 last month in Egypt.

- a. حضر قادة من كل أنحاء العالم لمناقشة حلول لمشكلة التغير المناخي والاحتباس الحراري في مؤتمر قارى معروف بمؤتمر الأمم المتحدة لتغير المناخ في مصر الشهر الماضي.
 b. تجمع قادة من كل أنحاء العالم لمناقشة حلول لمشكلة التغير المناخي والاحتباس الحراري في مؤتمر دولي معروف بمؤتمر الأمم المتحدة لتغير المناخ في مصر الشهر الماضي.
 c. قد يحضر قادة من كل أنحاء العالم لمناظرة حلول لمشكلة التغير المناخي والارتفاع الحراري في مؤتمر دولي معروف بمؤتمر الأمم المتحدة لتغير المناخ في مصر الشهر الماضي.
 d. قد يجتمع قادة من كل أنحاء العالم لمناقشة حلول لمشكلة التغير المناخي والاحتباس الحراري في مؤتمر دولي معروف بمؤتمر الأمم المتحدة لمشكلات المناخ في مصر الشهر الماضي.

b. **Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:**

ليس من السهل أن تحافظ على صحتك هذه الأيام بسبب انتشار الوجبات السريعة، لكن من لديه عزيمة ووعي يستطيع فعل ذلك.

- a. It's not easy to keep healthy nowadays because of the spread of the fast meals, but who has the determination and the awareness can do that.
 b. It's not easy to keep health nowadays because of the spread of the fast meals, but who has the separation and the awareness can do that.
 c. It's not hard to keep healthy nowadays because of the spread of the fast meals, but who has the determination and the awareness can do that.
 d. It's not easy to keep healthy nowadays because of the spread of the fast meals, but who has the determination and the awareness cannot do that.

5. **Answer the following questions:**

- Why was the fort very important for Captain Smollet and his men ?

- Why do you think Ben Gun seemed a little crazy ?

- If you were Captain Smollet, would you accept the truce with the pirates ? Why/Why not ?

6. **Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:**

“A holiday you would like to go on giving your reasons for your choice”

.....

11. The tennis player in the air. He had won the match.
a. jumped b. had jumped c. jump d. was jumped
12. Sara picked up her glasses. They She had stepped on them.
a. were broken b. was broken c. is broken d. are broken
13. If you well at school, you'll pass your tests.
a. do b. will do c. did d. would do
14. What if you can't sleep at night?
a. did you do b. were you doing
c. do you do d. would you do

3. Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

The celebration of Earth Day began in the city of San Francisco and was started by their **mayor** at the request of John McConnel. The first Earth Day celebration was held on March 21st which was the first day of spring. Earth Day is important because it reminds us to stop and look at the problems of our environment. These cause health problems to people living on Earth. Each of us must do our part to recycle and reuse products instead of throwing them away. The trash we deliver to our landfills each week is taking up valuable land and space we need for homes and farms. Earth Day is now celebrated each year on April 22nd. Schools around the world **take part** in making sure that our world is a cleaner place. Students volunteer to pick up trash at their schools, homes, and neighborhoods to do their part in helping our environment.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The smoke released into the air, by automobiles and industry is
a. healthy to breathe b. unhealthy to breathe
c. helpful to plants d. helpful to animals
2. What does Earth Day help us to do ?
a. Think of ways to recycle materials b. Pick up trash
c. Clean up our water sources d. All of these
3. The underlined word "**mayor**" means the
a. governor b. deliver c. scientist d. doctor
4. What can students do to help celebrate Earth Day ?
a. Have a party for it b. Sing songs
c. Pick up trash in their community d. Pick up trash to their schools
5. The first Earth Day celebration was held in.....
a. autumn b. winter c. summer d. spring
6. The phrasal verb "**take part**" can be replaced by "".
a. happen b. participate c. influence d. ignore
7. The best title of the passage is "".
a. Everyone has the choice b. Effects of nature
c. Earth Day d. Climatic changes

4. a. Choose the correct Arabic translation from a, b, c or d:

Lifelong learning is a voluntary continuous process of looking for new information all the time either for personal or professional reasons.

- a. التعلم مدى الحياة هو عملية اختيارية متصلة للبحث عن معلومات جديدة طول الوقت إما لأسباب علمية أو مهنية.
- b. التعلم عبر الحياة هو عملية تطوعية مستمرة لتقديم عن معلومات جديدة طول الوقت إما لأسباب شخصية أو مهنية.
- c. التعلم مدى الحياة هو عملية تطوعية مستمرة للبحث عن معلومات جديدة طول الوقت إما لأسباب شخصية أو مهنية.
- d. التعلم عبر الحياة هو عملية تطوعية متصلة للبحث عن معلومات جديدة طول الوقت إما لأسباب شخصية أو مهنية.

b. Choose the correct English translation from a, b, c or d:

من وجهة نظري الشخصية أن أحد أهم أسباب المشكلات الاجتماعية في مجتمعنا هو نقص القيم والوعي الأخلاقي في شوارعنا وبين شبابنا.

- a. In my person point of view, one of the most important causes for the social problems in out society is the lack of values and the formal awareness in our streets and among our youth.
- b. In my personal point of view, one of the most important causes of the sociable problems in our society is the leak of values and the moral awareness in our streets and among our youth.
- c. In my personal point of view, one of the most important causes of the social problems in our society is the lack of values and the moral awareness in our streets and among our youth.
- d. In my personal point of view, one of the most important reasons for the social problems in our society is the lake of values and the moral awareness in our streets and among our youth.

5. Answer the following questions:

1. Do you think Captain Smollett's men won the first fight? How do you know?
2. If you were Dr Livesey, would you leave the fort on your own to find Ben Gun? Why/Why not?
3. Why do you think Jim asked Hands to sail the ship to the north of the island?

6. Write an essay of about ONE HUNDRED AND FIFTY (150) words on the following topic:

“How modern technology help students learn better”

1. Choose the TWO correct answers out of the five options given :

1. "He is a caring friend." The adjective "caring" here means
a. cruel b. inconsiderate c. concerned
d. unconcerned e. loving
2. Something that is stressful is not
a. worrying b. worried c. demanding
d. easy e. relaxing
3. Mohammed Salah is a
a. celebration b. celebrity c. college
d. colleague e. footballer
4. She her mother. They both look the same.
a. varies from b. looks like
c. differs from d. resembles
e. appeals
5. When something is distant, it is
a. close b. nearby c. fake d. far away
e. remote
6. Those who attack ships are called
a. captains b. criminals c. crews d. pirates
e. sailors
7. Who of the following works for somebody at their home? - A/An
a. bully b. housekeeper
c. orphan d. stranger e. servant
8. Someone who has a lot of money and property can be described as
a. wealthy b. greedy c. rich d. poor
e. healthy
9. You can give This is a verbal collocation.
a. decision b. mistake c. advice
d. first aid e. lie
10. I visit my grandmother once week.
a. the b. a c. an d. every
e. both

11. When a place is messy, it is
a. ordered b. disordered c. orderly
d. tidy e. untidy
12. We didn't talk much. We had a chat.
a. long b. little c. messy
d. nasty e. brief
13. Criminals are cruel. The synonym of the word "cruel" is
a. savage b. kind c. merciful
d. miser e. brutal
14. He lives
a. alone b. lonely c. in a lonely house
d. a lone e. loneliness
15. A / An is a type of software that does a particular job on your smartphone or computer.
a. application b. invention c. app d. navigation
e. satnavs
16. is a system that uses radio signals from satellites to show your exact position.
a. CPR b. Cardiopulmonary resuscitation
c. ATM d. GPS
e. Global Positioning System
17. Stop making This is a verbal collocation.
a. achievements b. friends c. noise d. a difference
e. complaints
18. The word 'amazing' is synonymous with
a. ordinary b. breathtaking c. usual d. awesome
e. normal
19. I trust him because he is
a. rewarding b. rewarded c. reliable d. unreliable
e. dependable
20. Which of the following adjectives express good qualities ?
a. caring b. uncaring c. punctual d. careless
e. cruel

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Unit (7)

1. The police the house because it was old and might fall down at anytime.
a. wrapped b. ignored c. evacuated d. blew
2. The antonym of "tidy" is
a. quiet b. messy c. calm d. organized
3. My mother always changes the of our beds every two days.
a. handles b. helmets c. hammers d. bedding
4. Salma doesn't take her umbrella. The weather is quite nice.
a. has to b. have to c. had to d. ought to
5. It's against the law to park here. You park in some other place.
a. mustn't b. needn't c. have to d. shouldn't
6. Traffic rules
a. must follow b. must be followed
c. must be following d. have to follow

Unit (8)

1. The internet is the best that we have today.
a. discovery b. invitation c. invention d. exploration
2. Technology can to a lot of stress and it can stop people enjoying their free time.
a. cause b. lead c. create d. bring
3. In , hard work is the main key to success.
a. conclude b. conclusion c. conclusive d. translation
4. If you hit this donkey, it you.
a. kicks b. would kick c. will kick d. might kick
5. When water is boiled, it
a. evaporates b. would evaporate
c. might evaporate d. could evaporate
6. I would buy this jacket if I in your place.
a. am b. have been c. were d. had been

Unit (9)

1. Rich people usually have a at their homes to take care of the house.
a. servant b. soldier c. surgeon d. vet
2. "Failure" is the opposite of
a. madness b. growth c. experience d. success
3. My son, Basem, often takes in sports competitions and scores top ranks.
a. part b. department c. apartment d. partial
4. On home, she phoned her husband.
a. arrive b. arrives c. arriving d. had arrived
5. I the shopping after that I went home.
a. did b. had done c. have done d. am doing
6. No sooner the cake than I felt pain in my stomach.
a. I had eaten b. had I eaten c. I have eaten d. have I eaten

Unit (10)

1. Students have to be They have to arrive at school in time.
a. lazy b. practical c. punctual d. continual
2. The temperature is about 40 It's very hot and dry.
a. ranks b. degrees c. grades d. marks
3. This course students to be fluent in speaking English.
a. denies b. qualifies c. decreases d. relies
4. Rahma told me that she a book then.
a. read b. is reading c. would read d. was reading
5. They asked me I knew their names.
a. what b. how long c. who d. if
6. Ayman Ashraf was his best friend.
a. told b. said c. asked d. explained

Unit (11)

1. Saad is in a wheelchair. He has
a. ability b. disability c. disabled d. inability
2. Mohammed Salah the young to persevere to achieve their dreams.
a. depresses b. struggles c. inspires d. ignores
3. Nowadays big supermarkets have lifts and to help the disabled get from one floor to another.
a. ropes b. rails c. ramps d. rolls
4. Don't visit places bats live.
a. in which b. which c. in where d. when
5. The old man you often greet is so kind.
a. which b. whose c. who's d. whom
6. The woman the basket is my neighbour.
a. is carrying b. who is carrying c. carrying d. b & c

Unit (12)

1. His absence is still a No one knows where he has disappeared.
a. pace b. mystery c. weaver d. plot
2. Roaa is to Ahmed. Her wedding will be next May.
a. engaged b. free c. busy d. empty
3. Hala doesn't have children. She has decided to a girl baby from the orphanage.
a. adapt b. debt c. adopt d. borrow
4. The lights are on in Ramy's room. He awake. I'm certain.
a. must be b. can't be c. might be d. mustn't be
5. Basem the car. It was really a bargain.
a. should buy b. must buy
c. should have bought d. shouldn't buy
6. Rodayna her exams. She is happy.
a. can't fail b. must fail
c. can't have failed d. must have failed

3. A. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A friend of mine once had an amusing experience on a bus. He very **rarely** travels by bus because he has been driving his own car for many years. But it so happened that his car broke down near his home. He was going to buy a fridge after he had taken out of the bank five thousand pounds that could cover the price of the set. He put the money in an envelope in one of his pockets and got on a bus. He met an old friend on the bus and had a conversation with him.

Unconsciously, every now and then he put his hand on his pocket to make sure that the envelope was still there. But suddenly he felt it had gone. He looked at the faces of the people around him but couldn't know who was the thief. He didn't lose his nerve and with a smile said to his friend, "A foolish thief has taken from my pocket an envelope which is full of newspaper cuttings about a subject. I am going to write an article for my paper. I think the fool thought it was full of money."

Everybody heard what he said and the man looked down and saw his envelope under the feet of the passengers. He picked it. As he was anxious to count the money in it, he left the bus the next stop. He was happy to find all the five thousand pounds in the envelope.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

- The writer's friend pretended to be a
a. bus driver b. journalist c. policeman d. thief
- The thief threw the envelope on the bus floor because
a. it contained five thousand pounds
b. he was tricked into believing that it had no money
c. he was tricked into believing that it didn't have newspaper cuttings
d. he was afraid of being arrested
- The writer's friend had his money back because
a. he knew the thief at once
b. he knew the thief but didn't arrest him
c. he behaved wisely
d. he didn't know the thief at all
- The underlined sentence "He didn't lose his nerve" in the passage means most likely that the writer's friend
a. stayed calm b. became nervous
c. became furious d. stayed tensioned

5. The best title for the story can be ".....".
 - a. Theft
 - b. Amusement
 - c. Situation intelligence
 - d. Buying sets
6. Which sentence can be the moral of the story ?
 - a. Be nervous.
 - b. Be intelligent.
 - c. Be careless.
 - d. Don't have money.
7. After the writer's friend found the envelope, he was to count the money in it.
 - a. wise
 - b. eager to
 - c. intelligent
 - d. foolish
8. The word "**rarely**" can be replaced by
 - a. seldom
 - b. always
 - c. usually
 - d. often
9. The writer wanted to buy a with his money.
 - a. TV
 - b. fridge
 - c. car
 - d. washing machine
10. The thief was really
 - a. intelligent
 - b. nervous
 - c. foolish
 - d. happy

B. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

I was very interested while listening to my friend telling me the following story which he had read in a newspaper. It was a hot noon, and the few people walking along the street stood struck **dumb** gazing up a man in the air little by little falling down to the earth. His wide new garment acted as a parachute when his foot slipped off the wooden board he was standing on while painting the front of a high house.

It was funny that he fell down on his feet inside the box of a lorry that happened to be passing by at the time. When the people shouted, the lorry driver stopped and the man jumped off delighted at being saved. If the lorry had been a second later, it would have knocked him down dead, so he insisted on giving the driver **a treat**. He crossed the street to buy him a coca cola. On his way back, he was so excited that he couldn't avoid being struck down by a motorcycle running fast along the street. He fell down on the ground. The people hurried to help him rise to his feet, but they found him dead.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. The man's garment caused him to
 - a. fall down dead
 - b. fall off the board
 - c. fall down gradually
 - d. fall down rapidly
2. The idea of the passage is from
 - a. a story
 - b. an accident
 - c. fancy
 - d. facts

3. The lorry had arrived at the place
 - a. when the man's foot slipped off
 - b. while the man was painting
 - c. before the man reached the ground
 - d. after the man reached the ground
4. The word "**a treat**" in the passage most likely means
 - a. behaving towards someone
 - b. something you buy for another one
 - c. a cure given for patients
 - d. a treatment
5. Which of the following can be a best summary to the second paragraph ?
 - a. Fate is stronger than will.
 - b. You can do what you want.
 - c. You can get what you need.
 - d. People are different.
6. The man was lucky when
 - a. he fell into the box
 - b. people hurried to help him
 - c. the motorcycle ran fast
 - d. he fell down on the ground
7. The person could avoid falling by
 - a. giving the driver a treat
 - b. tying himself to something
 - c. painting a high house
 - d. running fast along the street
8. The man was struck by a running fast along the street.
 - a. motorcycle
 - b. lorry
 - c. cart
 - d. car
9. The word "**dumb**" means people who can't
 - a. listen
 - b. see
 - c. speak
 - d. eat
10. A garment is a kind of
 - a. metal
 - b. clothes
 - c. plastic
 - d. wood

C. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Scientists believe that there is a number of reasons for climatic changes. One reason could be the changes in the amount of heat which actually comes from the sun at different times. Another could be volcanic dust. People have also been adding gases such as carbon dioxide to the atmosphere. These are called greenhouse gases because they hang in the atmosphere around the Earth like the roof and walls of a greenhouse. The Earth receives heat and light from the sun which sends this back into space as infrared radiation. Much of this radiation cannot pass through the greenhouse gases and this causes increased temperatures near the Earth.

The amount of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere is increasing mainly because all countries burn fossil fuels such as oil, natural gas and coal. The **destruction** of the big rainforests, which **absorb** carbon dioxide and give out oxygen, makes matters worse.

D. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Everyone of us dreams of becoming famous one day or another. Sportsmen and champions of games and sports enjoy great fame. Film stars, singers and musicians are known all over the world. They have admirers and fans who send them letters and hang their photographs on the walls of their houses.

The writers, poets, businessmen and great men are famous people and their fame goes far wide. Anyhow, fame is not easily obtained but it is the result of hard work and suffering.

But, the life of famous people is not an easy one. It is very busy and full of troubles and responsibilities. They appear smiling but in fact they are busy-minded, and **their time is arranged for them**. Newspapers and magazines write about them and sometimes about their private lives and this annoys them. Their smallest mistakes appear larger by those who dislike them. Though fame has its troubles, a great number of people desire to get fame.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

1. Famous people may appear happy
 - a. although they are not wealthy
 - b. despite being so busy
 - c. in spite of having time arranged for them
 - d. because their fame has gone far and wide
2. Famous people feel furious when
 - a. they are well known all over the world
 - b. they have fans
 - c. their private lives are talked about
 - d. their photographs are hung on the walls
3. The underlined sentence "**their time is arranged for them**" most likely means that famous people
 - a. have free time as they like
 - b. are free to do what they like
 - c. are not always busy and have spare time
 - d. aren't free to do what they like
4. According to the passage, the life of famous people is
 - a. an easy one
 - b. full of hardships and duties
 - c. full of fun and pleasure
 - d. an enjoyable one
5. Good people will if they become famous.
 - a. help others
 - b. hate others
 - c. gain money
 - d. be strict

6. The best title to the passage is “.....” .
- | | |
|---------------|------------------|
| a. Sportsmen | b. Champions |
| c. Film stars | d. Famous people |
7. The last paragraph can be summarized in the following sentence
- | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| a. Their fame hurts them | b. Their private life hurts them |
| c. Newspapers write about them | d. Their desires are serious |
8. A great number of people desire to get fame. This means they to get fame.
- | | | | |
|---------|-----------|---------|------------|
| a. want | b. detest | c. meet | d. mistake |
|---------|-----------|---------|------------|
9. Admirers and fans are
- | | | | |
|-------------|-------------|--------------|----------|
| a. synonyms | b. antonyms | c. opposites | d. verbs |
|-------------|-------------|--------------|----------|
10. Fame is not easily but it is the result of hard work and suffering.
- | | | | |
|----------|-------------|----------|------------|
| a. given | b. obtained | c. taken | d. desired |
|----------|-------------|----------|------------|

E. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

There are several arguments **in favour of** working as a teacher. It is a very interesting job because teachers have contact with many young and creative pupils. They can learn very interesting things from each other - both a teacher and students. What is more, pupils do not allow teachers to lose their creativity. And you have to deal with them successfully. Furthermore, it is a rewarding job, as when teachers see how their students become wiser and well-educated people, they can be happy and proud. You feel useful for others and what is most important, you help children not only learn more but also solve their problems.

However, there is also a number of difficulties of being a teacher. Firstly, it is a stressful job - you are responsible for your students. You must take care of your pupils like your own children. Kids should feel safe with you, have to trust you and feel comfortable when you talk to them. Sometimes a teacher must be very patient and behave calmly even when the situation is not easy. Teachers should know that they play a very important role in every student's life. Moreover, it can be a very depressing job for people who have not got strong character. Last but not least, this job is very tiresome. You have to explain a lot of difficult things to children. They are always asking: “How?”, “Why?” and “What for?”. It may be irritating but you cannot say “This is unimportant”. You must answer them and what is more important is to set a good example for them.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The expression “**in favour of**” means “.....” .
- | | | | |
|------------|------------|---------------|-------------|
| a. without | b. against | c. supporting | d. opposing |
|------------|------------|---------------|-------------|

2. According to the passage, the stress in the teaching profession is a result of
 - a. the wise and well-educated students
 - b. the students' creativity
 - c. the fact that both students and teachers learn
 - d. the responsibility of students
3. The word "....." from the passage means "annoying".
 - a. irritating
 - b. creative
 - c. rewarding
 - d. important
4. Which of the following can be the best summary to the last paragraph ?
 - a. The advantages of being a teacher.
 - b. The difficulties of being a teacher.
 - c. Teaching is an easy job.
 - d. Teaching is the best job.
5. Which of the following is correct ?
 - a. Teachers deal with only creative pupils
 - b. Teachers lose their creativity with pupils
 - c. Pupils lose their creativity with teachers
 - d. Teachers do their best for the students
6. Students feel with good teachers.
 - a. angry
 - b. nervous
 - c. worried
 - d. satisfied
7. Teaching
 - a. is easy and simple
 - b. depends on creativity
 - c. is not an important job
 - d. is not a job
8. Teaching can be a very depressing job for people who have not got strong
 - a. character
 - b. irritation
 - c. reward
 - d. creativity
9. Teaching is a very tiring job since you have to a lot of things to students.
 - a. get
 - b. take
 - c. explain
 - d. give
10. Teaching is a rewarding job when you see how your students become people.
 - a. more stupid
 - b. more dangerous
 - c. wiser
 - d. inaccurate

F. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

People may be divided into two types, winners and losers. Winners are able to change their situations and become independent by being responsible for their own lives. They don't blame others for their mistakes. They do their own thinking. They listen to others and evaluate what they say, and then they make up their minds.

Although they may fail at times, they keep self-confidence. Winners overcome their bad experiences. They enjoy work, play, food and the world of nature. They freely enjoy themselves, but they can postpone it if duty calls.

Losers, **on the other hand**, never learn to take responsibility for their own lives. There are many reasons why people can become losers like disease, poor nutrition, cruelty, unhappy relationships and bad experiences. These can interfere with the normal progress towards becoming a winner. But whereas winners fight these situations, losers hang onto them and use them as excuses. Losers usually feel anxious, unhappy and bored. They are afraid to try new things and often repeat their own mistakes again and again.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. When the winners fail at times, they
 - a. never keep their self-confidence
 - b. are afraid to try new things
 - c. never repeat their own mistakes
 - d. spend their time waiting
2. Losers are people who
 - a. try to change
 - b. blame others for their mistakes
 - c. overcome their bad mistakes
 - d. learn to take responsibility
3. The opposite of "hang onto a situation" in the last paragraph is
 - a. give it up
 - b. depend on
 - c. dream of it
 - d. be independent
4. The underlined phrase "**on the other hand**" means
 - a. however
 - b. because
 - c. as
 - d. so

B. Answer the following questions :

5. Which quality do you think is most important for winners? Why?
.....
6. Which quality do you think is the main reason for being a loser? Why?
.....
7. Do you think losers can be winners one day? How?
.....

A. 1. Translate into Arabic :

Never stop when you make mistakes or fail to achieve a goal. To err is human, and making mistakes is your best instructor.

.....

.....

2. Translate into English :

من الواجب علينا جميعاً أن نبذل قصارى جهدنا لتحقيق التقدم والرخاء لمصرنا الحبيبة، فلن تصبح بلدنا قوية ومتقدمة إلا بجهود أبنائها المخلصين.

.....

.....

B. 1. Translate into Arabic :

A friend in need is a friend indeed. If you haven't learn the meaning of friendship, you really haven't learned anything.

.....

.....

2. Translate into English :

إن للأسرة دوراً مهماً وحيوياً في حياة الأطفال، فهي المدرسة الأولى التي يعرف الحياة من خلالها، وهي تساهم بشكل كبير في تكوين وتنمية شخصيتهم.

.....

.....

C. 1. Translate into Arabic :

A wise educational policy directs education towards fulfilling the needs of society. It also deals with its current and future problems. This leads to the welfare of both the individual and the society.

.....

.....

2. Translate into English :

من حقل أن تعبر عن رأيك بحرية ولكن يجب أن تحترم الآخرين كما أنه من حقل أن تحقق طموحاتك ولكن بدون أن تؤذى الآخرين.

.....

.....

D. 1. Translate into Arabic :

Water has many benefits. It is the elixir of life. It is a renewable source of energy. The force of fast-moving water such as rivers or waterfalls produces electricity.

2. Translate into English :

حصل المنتخب الوطني المصري للشباب على البطولة الأفريقية لكرة القدم، وهذا لم يكن مجرد صدفة ولكن نتيجة تخطيط دقيق. فالتخطيط والدراسة المتأنية هما أسباب النجاح.

E. 1. Translate into Arabic :

There have been great achievements in the field of communication technology. That has greatly influenced the way people exchange information.

2. Translate into English :

تُتيح الأجيال الجديدة من الهواتف الذكية إجراء مكالمات الفيديو، أي أنك تستطيع أن تري الشخص الذي تتحدث إليه بصورة واضحة وعالية الجودة.

F. 1. Translate into Arabic :

All living creatures need to cooperate in order to achieve their goals. Teamwork is something we cannot do without. It is essential for the success of any project.

2. Translate into English :

يواجه الشباب هذه الأيام كثير من التحديات. والحصول على وظيفة جيدة إحدى هذه التحديات، لذلك من الضروري لهم أن يتحلوا بالسمات الجيدة وأن يمتلكوا المؤهلات المطلوبة في سوق العمل.

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

1. “The advantages and disadvantages of mobile phones”

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

2. “The dangers of pollution and how to overcome them”

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

3. “The role of sons towards their parents”

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

4. “Tourism is Egypt’s greatest treasure”

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

5. “How to solve the problem of over crowdedness”

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

6. “A holiday you would like to go on, giving your reasons for your choice”

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

(MC) Questions الأسئلة الاختيارية

* Answers to General Questions :

1. Choose the TWO correct answers out of the five options given :

- | | | | |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. c - e | 2. d - e | 3. b - e | 4. b - d |
| 5. d - e | 6. b - d | 7. b - e | 8. a - c |
| 9. c - d | 10. b - d | 11. b - e | 12. b - e |
| 13. a - e | 14. a - b | 15. a - c | 16. d - e |
| 17. c - e | 18. b - d | 19. c - e | 20. a - c |

2. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- | | | | |
|-------------|------|------|------|
| U 7 : 1. c | 2. b | 3. d | 4. b |
| 5. c | 6. b | | |
| U 8 : 1. c | 2. b | 3. b | 4. c |
| 5. a | 6. c | | |
| U 9 : 1. a | 2. d | 3. a | 4. c |
| 5. b | 6. b | | |
| U 10 : 1. c | 2. b | 3. b | 4. d |
| 5. d | 6. b | | |
| U 11 : 1. b | 2. c | 3. c | 4. a |
| 5. d | 6. d | | |
| U 12 : 1. b | 2. a | 3. c | 4. a |
| 5. c | 6. c | | |

3. A. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. b | 2. b | 3. c | 4. a | 5. c |
| 6. b | 7. b | 8. a | 9. b | 10. c |

B. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. c | 2. a | 3. c | 4. b | 5. a |
| 6. a | 7. b | 8. a | 9. c | 10. b |

C. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. d | 2. d | 3. c | 4. b | 5. a |
| 6. b | 7. a | 8. c | 9. b | 10. b |

D. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. b | 2. c | 3. d | 4. b | 5. a |
| 6. d | 7. a | 8. a | 9. a | 10. b |

E. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. c | 2. d | 3. a | 4. b | 5. d |
| 6. d | 7. b | 8. a | 9. c | 10. c |

F. Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. c | 2. b | 3. a | 4. a |
|------|------|------|------|

B. Answer the following questions :

5. I think self-confidence is the most important quality in winners because a self-confident person faces his mistakes and never gives up.
6. I think blaming others for mistakes is the main reason for being a loser. Losers never admit بـ يقر their mistakes and never try to correct them.
7. Of course they can. Once بمجرد أن they have self-confidence and learn from their mistakes, they will become winners.



Part

2

(CR) Questions الأسئلة المقالية

A. 1. Translate into Arabic :

لا تتوقف عندما تخطئ أو تفشل في تحقيق هدف. فالخطأ شيء إنساني وارتكاب الأخطاء هو أفضل مُعلم.

2. Translate into English :

We all have to do our best to achieve progress and welfare for our beloved Egypt, which won't be a strong, developed country without the effort of its loyal people.

B. 1. Translate into Arabic :

الصديق وقت الضيق، وإذا لم تتعلم معنى الصداقة ، فأنت لم تتعلم شيئاً حقاً.

2. Translate into English :

The family has an important and vital role in children's lives. It is the first school through which they know life. It contributes greatly to the formation and development of their personality.

C. 1. Translate into Arabic :

السياسة التعليمية الحكيمة هي التي توجه التعليم تجاه تحقيق احتياجات المجتمع وتتعامل أيضاً مع الوضع الحالي والمشاكل المستقبلية وهذا يؤدي إلى رفاهية كلاً من الفرد والمجتمع.

2. Translate into English :

You have the right to express your opinion freely but you must respect others. You have the right to achieve your ambitions but you mustn't hurt others.

D. 1. Translate into Arabic :

الماء له فوائد كثيرة فهو أكسير الحياة ومصدر متجدد للطاقة. قوة حركة المياه السريعة مثل الأنهار والشلالات تولد الكهرباء.

2. Translate into English :

The national football young team won the Africa Cup of Nations. This wasn't by chance but it was due to accurate planning. Wise planning and study are the reasons for success.

E. 1. Translate into Arabic :

كانت هناك إنجازات كبيرة في مجال تكنولوجيا الاتصالات، وقد أثر ذلك إلى حد كبير على طريقة تبادل الناس للمعلومات.

2. Translate into English :

New generations of smart phones make video calls possible. This means you can see the person you are talking to in a clear, high-quality video.

F. 1. Translate into Arabic :

كل الكائنات الحية تحتاج إلى التعاون لتحقيق أهدافها. فالعمل الجماعي هو شيء لا نستطيع الاستغناء عنه. فهو ضروري لنجاح أي مشروع.

2. Translate into English :

Recently, the young face a lot of challenges. One of these challenges is having a good job, so, it is necessary for them to have good qualities and the required qualifications for the labour market.

3. Write an essay of about 150 words on the following topic :

Student's own answer